

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 945SH.

- For proper handset use, read "Quick Tips" (in the box) and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank Mobile services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 945SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-43**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Universal Operations, Etc.	3
Calling	4
Messaging	5
Internet	6
Digital TV	7
Camera & Imaging	8
Video & Music	9
S! Applications & Widgets	10
Handy Extras	11
Entertainment	12
Handset Security	13
Data Folder & Memory Card	14
Connectivity & File Backup	15
Handset Customization	16
Appendix	17



Notes

- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings* with clamshell open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-7**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.
- In this guide and on handset, "abroad" means "outside Japan" with regard to handset/service usage.

*With the exception that Handset Code and Administrator Code are set.

Guide Usage Notes	ii	User Dictionary	3-12	PC Sites	6-5
Table of Contents	iii	Dictionary	3-13	Browsing	6-6
Accessories	v	Search	3-16	Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-9
Safety Precautions	vi	Scratch Pad	3-17	RSS Feeds	6-10
1 Getting Started		Phone Book	3-18	Additional Functions	6-11
Handset Parts	1-2	Additional Functions	3-21	Troubleshooting	6-19
Charging Battery	1-4	Troubleshooting	3-26	7 Digital TV	
Power On/Off	1-7	4 Calling		Digital TV	7-2
Display & Indicators	1-8	Emergency Calls	4-2	Recording/Playing	7-8
Sub Display	1-12	Voice Calling	4-3	TV Timer	7-10
Security Codes	1-13	Video Calling	4-5	Time Shift	7-11
Additional Functions	1-15	Speed Dial & Rakutomo Link	4-6	Additional Functions	7-12
2 Basic Operations		Call Log	4-8	Troubleshooting	7-18
Interface & Storage	2-2	Call Time	4-9	8 Camera & Imaging	
Touch Panel	2-4	Call Barring	4-10	Camera	8-2
Menu Operations	2-6	Optional Services	4-12	Photo Camera	8-6
Spinguru Menu	2-10	Additional Functions	4-14	Video Camera	8-17
Accessing Functions	2-13	Troubleshooting	4-21	Opening Files	8-24
Viewer Position	2-17	5 Messaging		Editing Images	8-28
Motion Control	2-18	Messaging	5-2	Editing Video	8-33
Keypad Lock	2-20	Sending Messages	5-4	DPOF	8-34
Mobile Manners	2-21	Incoming Messages	5-13	Additional Functions	8-35
Basic Tools	2-22	Handling Messages	5-16	Troubleshooting	8-42
Double Number	2-23	Chat Folder	5-19	9 Video & Music	
Additional Functions	2-26	Mail Groups	5-20	Videos/Music	9-2
3 Universal Operations, Etc.		PC Mail	5-21	Media Player	9-3
Fonts	3-2	Additional Functions	5-24	Music	9-5
Wallpaper	3-3	Troubleshooting	5-41	Video	9-6
Customized Screen	3-4	6 Internet		Playlists	9-7
Sounds & Alerts	3-5	Internet Services	6-2	Additional Functions	9-8
Text Entry	3-6	Yahoo! Keitai	6-3	Troubleshooting	9-12

10 S! Applications & Widgets

S! Appli	10-2
Mobile Widget.....	10-3
Additional Functions	10-6
Troubleshooting	10-10

11 Handy Extras

Calendar & Tasks	11-2
Alarms.....	11-8
Wakeup TV.....	11-10
Charging Theater	11-12
Relaxation Time	11-13
Household Accounts	11-14
Calculator	11-18
Expenses Memo.....	11-19
Osaifu-Keitai®	11-20
Simulated Call	11-24
Stopwatch.....	11-25
Countdown Timer	11-26
World Clock	11-27
Hour Minder	11-28
Pedometer	11-29
Compass.....	11-31
S! GPS Navi	11-32
Document Viewer	11-35
Notepad.....	11-36
ASCII Art	11-37
Voice Recorder	11-38
Scan Barcode	11-39
Create QR Code	11-40
Scan Card	11-41
Scan Text	11-42

Kanji/English Grabber	11-43
Additional Functions	11-44
Troubleshooting	11-59

12 Entertainment

S! Quick News	12-2
S! Information Channel.....	12-3
Content Downloads	12-4
e-Books.....	12-5
S! Friend's Status.....	12-6
S! Circle Talk.....	12-9
Blog Tool.....	12-11
Additional Functions	12-13
Troubleshooting	12-17

13 Handset Security

Handset Security.....	13-2
Function Control	13-4
Additional Functions	13-5

14 Data Folder & Memory Card

Data Folder	14-2
Memory Card	14-5
Additional Functions	14-7
Troubleshooting	14-10

15 Connectivity & File Backup

Wi-Fi	15-2
Infrared.....	15-7
IC Transmission	15-11
Bluetooth®.....	15-13
External Device Connection.....	15-17
HDMI Connection	15-18
Backup	15-20

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)....	15-22
Additional Functions	15-25
Troubleshooting	15-30

16 Handset Customization

Date & Time	16-2
Display & Illumination.....	16-3
Incoming Transmissions	16-5
Sounds	16-6
Connectivity.....	16-7
Reset	16-8

17 Appendix

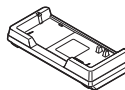
USIM Card	17-2
Battery.....	17-4
Software Update	17-5
Cleaning Handset.....	17-6
Troubleshooting	17-7
Text Entry Key Assignments.....	17-9
Pager Codes	17-11
Character Codes	17-12
Weather Indicators.....	17-18
Specifications.....	17-19
Menu List	17-26
Index.....	17-34
Warranty & Service	17-42
Customer Service.....	17-43

Accessories

■ Battery (SHBDA1)



■ Desktop Holder (SHEDA1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-43**).
- Use specified Charger or Headphones (each sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions







Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 CAUTION	Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 Prohibited	Prohibited actions
 Do Not Disassemble	Disassembly prohibited
 Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	Exposure to liquids prohibited
 Do Not Use Wet Hands	Use with wet hands prohibited
 Compulsory	Compulsory actions
 Disconnect Power Source	Unplug Charger from outlet

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Desktop Holder, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)

DANGER

Use specified battery, Desktop Holder and Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.

Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not Disassemble

Do not expose internal handset parts, battery, Desktop Holder or Charger to liquids.

Do not let liquid-exposed internal parts remain wet; do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use handset/related hardware properly/appropriately.



Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

WARNING

Do not place handset, battery, Desktop Holder or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset, Desktop Holder or Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; power handset off before using Osaifu-Keita[®] at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).



Compulsory

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, power handset off, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals, External Device Port or HDMI Port. May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Safety Precautions

Do not charge battery while handset is wet.

May cause electric shock or short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Do not expose handset or related hardware to hot air from dryers, etc. to dry them or for any other purpose. Avoid saunas or hot water.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset, Desktop Holder or Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction, etc.



Prohibited



CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; take added care when Vibration is set or while charging.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

If your child is using handset/related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.

Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Battery



DANGER

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory



WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

Keep battery away from pets.

Pet bites may cause battery to leak, burst, overheat, ignite, etc.



Compulsory



CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

Handset

**WARNING****Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.**

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

CAUTION:

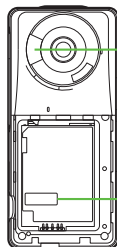
Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.



Prohibited

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1
LED Product



Mobile Light

CAUTION-CLASS 2
LED RADIATION WHEN
OPEN DO NOT STARE
INTO THE BEAM

■ Mobile Light LED Properties

- Emission Duration: Continuous
- Wavelength
White: 400 - 700 nm
- Maximum Emission Output
White: 1.1 mW (4.3 mW inside handset)

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Accidents may result.
Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park legally beforehand.



Prohibited

Power handset off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc.

Take added care near these devices:
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

Power handset off before boarding aircraft to avoid possible radio wave interference with aircraft operations.

If mobile phone use is allowed on board, follow airline or cabin crew instructions regarding handset use.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, power handset off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited

**CAUTION****Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.**

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Metal and other materials (P.17-19) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

Be sure there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.

Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.



Prohibited

Safety Precautions

Do not swing handset by strap or TV Antenna.

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.

May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

Watch TV from a distance in good light.

Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.



Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

Desktop Holder (Included) & Charger (Sold Separately)



WARNING

Do not cover/wrap Charger/Desktop Holder while charging.

Charger/Desktop Holder may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.

- AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (use in negative earth vehicles only): DC 12V/24V Input

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Prohibited

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect
Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger.

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect
Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with dry cloth.

Fire may result.



Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger in positive earth vehicles.

May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use
Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.



Prohibited

Do not expose Desktop Holder or Charger to liquids/high humidity (e.g., precipitation, bath/shower rooms, restrooms, etc.).

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Prohibited



CAUTION

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect
Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder while it is connected to the outlet.

May cause burn injuries.



Prohibited

Take care not to pinch fingers when opening/closing Desktop Holder Stand.

May cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



WARNING

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.



Compulsory

Power handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Compulsory

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset/Memory Card files or settings. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.** Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
Eavesdropping
Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (up to 40°C for brief periods in bath/shower rooms, etc.) and 35% - 90% humidity.
- Avoid extreme temperatures or direct sunlight.
- Malfunction resulting from misuse is not covered by the warranty.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with soft dry cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.
- Connect only specified products to External Device Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Do not force an HDMI cable (sold separately) into/out of HDMI Port.
- Place handset on a flat, stable surface when connected to a TV via an HDMI cable; tilting an HDMI cable relative to handset may prevent proper connection, causing malfunction, etc.
- Always power handset off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not power handset off while using Memory Card; may result in data loss or malfunction.

- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.

Bluetooth® Function

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from data/information leakage due to use of handset Bluetooth® function.

■ Precautions

- The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").
- 1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
 - 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
 - 3 For additional information and support, contact **SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information:** From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157. To call toll free from landlines, see **P.17-43 "Customer Service."**

Frequency Band

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet). It is not possible for the radio station to avoid using the frequency band of the mobile unit identification apparatus.



Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)

Wireless LAN (hereafter "Wi-Fi") uses radio waves to enable communication between compatible devices, thus allowing connection to a local area network from anywhere within the range.

However, there is a risk of data interception unless security is established. It is advisable for the user to configure security settings on their own responsibility before using Wi-Fi.

- Do not use Wi-Fi near electrical appliances, audiovisual equipment or office automation equipment; may affect Wi-Fi transmission speed, availability, clarity, etc. (There is a possibility of interference especially when a microwave oven is in use.)
- The target access point may not be detected correctly if there are multiple access points nearby.

■ Precautions

The frequency band utilized by handset Wi-Fi is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Wi-Fi, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or disable Wi-Fi immediately.

3 For additional information and support, contact **SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information:** From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157. To call toll free from landlines, see **P.17-43** "Customer Service."

Frequency Band

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with DSSS-OFDM modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 40 meters (131 feet).

2.4DS4/OF4

■ Simultaneous Use with Bluetooth®

Both Wi-Fi (IEEE 802.11b/g) and Bluetooth® use the 2.4 GHz band. Therefore, Wi-Fi transmission speed, availability and clarity may be affected when Bluetooth® device is used near handset or when handset Bluetooth® is active. Should interference occur, discontinue use of the Bluetooth® device or cancel handset Bluetooth®.

- This handset supports Wi-Fi channels 1 - 13. Handset will not connect to access points set to other channels.
- Available channels vary by country.
- For use of Wi-Fi aboard aircraft, check with airline beforehand.
- In some countries/regions, such as France, there are restrictions on the use of Wi-Fi. If you intend to use Wi-Fi on the handset abroad, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.16-7**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Images captured with the camera cannot be used/transferred without the permission of copyright holders (photographers, etc.), except for personal use.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

In-Cal/Transmission Caution

During calls/transmissions, calling/transmission charges/fees apply even if other functions or operations are simultaneously in use.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

In some countries/regions, such as France, there are restrictions on the use of Wi-Fi. If you intend to use Wi-Fi on the handset abroad, check the local laws and regulations beforehand.

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 945SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.

As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
945SH	0.828 W/kg	0.751 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

**Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Headphone Signal Level

The maximum output voltage for the music player function, measured in accordance with EN 50332-2, is 29.0 mV.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
945SH	APYHRO00124	0.255 W/kg	0.567 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

Water & Dust Resistance

945SH Water & Dust Resistance

945SH complies with IPX5 (former JIS protection level 5)¹ and IPX7 (former JIS protection level 7)² water protection standards as well as IP5X (JIS protection level 5)³ dust protection standard, with Port Covers and Battery Cover closed firmly.

¹ IPX5 compliant means that a handset continues to function as a phone after being subjected to a water jet (approximately 12.5 liters/min.) discharged from a nozzle (inner diameter: 6.3 mm), from all directions (approximately 3 m from handset) for at least 3 minutes.

² IPX7 compliant means that a handset continues to function as a phone after being gently submerged to the depth of 1 m in still tap water at room temperature, left there for approximately 30 minutes, then removed from it.

³ IP5X compliant means that a handset continues to function as a phone and its safety is maintained after being agitated in a device containing dust of 75 µm or smaller in diameter for 8 hours, then removed from the device.

- **Water/dust resistance may be affected under some circumstances. Malfunction resulting from misuse is not covered by the warranty.**
- **945SH is compliant with IPX5, IPX7 and IP5X water/dust protection standards. However, ingress of dirt, sand, mud, metal powder, food, beverage, etc. may cause malfunction.**

Important Notes

- Close Battery Cover and Port Covers firmly. Debris (hair, sand, fibers, etc.) trapped between Cover and base may expose handset to liquid/dust.
- If Battery/Port Cover is left open liquid exposure may cause handset malfunction/electric shock. Power handset off, then remove battery.
- If handset is wet, wipe it with dry cloth.
- Do not open/close Battery/Port Cover with wet hands or while handset is wet.
- Handset is resistant to fresh/tap water at normal temperature (5°C - 35°C) only.

Precautions

- Do not subject handset to soap, detergent, bath powder/oil, sea/pool/spa water, hot water, etc.
- Wash off sea/pool water, beverage, dirt, sand, mud, etc. immediately; residue may cause malfunction if allowed to dry.
- Wash off sand, dirt, etc. completely before use; any residue may damage handset causing malfunction.
- Do not soak handset in bath or pool; never use it in water (including opening/closing of handset and pressing keys).
- Handset is not resistant to water pressure. Avoid high-pressure water/shower (over 6 liters/min.) or water immersion.
- Do not expose handset to extreme humidity for long periods; avoid prolonged use in bath/shower rooms.

- Do not use in saunas. Avoid hot air from dryers, etc.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (up to 40°C for brief periods in bath/shower rooms, etc.) and 35% - 90% humidity.
- Avoid extreme temperatures (e.g., near stoves, inside refrigerators, etc.).
- Volume may be low when Microphone/Earpiece/ Speaker is wet; dry handset before use.
- Battery, Desktop Holder and optional accessories are not waterproofed or dustproofed.
- Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts; do not poke Microphone, Earpiece, Speaker, etc. with a cotton swab or sharp object; water/dust resistance may be affected.
- Avoid placing handset directly on sand. Sand may penetrate Earpiece, Speaker, etc., resulting in low volume.
- Sand, etc. trapped in the hinge may cause excessive friction or noise when opening/closing handset.
- Touch Panel may not respond properly if wet or touched with wet fingers.
- Do not move handset directly from a cold place to a warm humid place; condensation may occur. Should this happen, dry handset naturally at room temperature.
- 945SH does not float on water.
- Keep handset out of heavy rain.
- Do not let liquid-exposed handset remain wet; exposure to cold may freeze liquid causing malfunction.
- Damaged Battery/Port Cover affects water/dust resistance; contact a SoftBank Shop.

Charging Precautions

- Battery, Desktop Holder and optional accessories are not waterproofed or dustproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids/high humidity (e.g., precipitation, bath/shower rooms, restrooms, etc.); may cause fire, electric shock or damage.
- Never charge battery while handset is wet; may cause fire or damage due to electric shock or short-circuit.
- Close Port Cover firmly after charging via External Device Port. Use Desktop Holder to prevent ingress of water and dust via External Device Port.
- Do not touch Desktop Holder or Charger with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use Desktop Holder or Charger in rooms in which water is regularly in use (kitchens, bath/shower rooms, etc.); may cause fire or electric shock.

Gasket Care & Maintenance

Proper care of the rubber seals around Port Covers and Battery Cover is crucial for continued handset water/dust resistance.

- Do not remove or damage gaskets. Keep them clean.
- Do not insert sharp objects through Port/Battery Cover gaps; may damage gasket and affect water/dust resistance.
- If Port/Battery Cover gasket is damaged or deformed, replace it with a new one.
- To maintain water/dust resistance, replace gaskets every two years regardless of their condition.
- For gasket replacements, contact a SoftBank Shop.
- Damaged Port Cover affects water/dust resistance; contact a SoftBank Shop.
- If Battery Cover is damaged, replace it with a new one. Use of damaged Cover may cause electric shock, battery corrosion, etc. due to water seepage.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsively.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software; do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.

This product is licensed under the AVC Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC Standard ("AVC Video") and/or (ii) decode AVC Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.

BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.

Powered by JBlend™.

Copyright 1997-2010

Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



The microSD and microSDHC logos are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.

The Twitter name and logo are registered trademarks of Twitter, Inc.

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2010 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

945SH wireless LAN is based on the IEEE 802.11 standard and is "Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™" by the Wi-Fi Alliance®; interoperability with other devices with the Wi-Fi logo is guaranteed.

945SH is compatible with IEEE 802.11b and IEEE 802.11g standards.



945SH employs Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS) which simplifies the wireless LAN security setup (SSID, authentication method, security key, etc.) by using the PBC method or PIN method.



Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, WPA®, WPA2® and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by MascotCapsule®.

Powered by MascotCapsule®/3DView package™. MascotCapsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.

©2002-2010 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

☞ is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



**ADOBE®
FLASH™
ENABLED**

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

WakeUp TV, VeilView, Smartlink, Simulated Call, AQUOS, AQUOS SHOT, AQUOS Familink, Chase focus, Spinguru Menu, Best Select Photo, Shot Memo, Pretty Arrange Camera, Animation View and Rakutomo Link are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.

piccel



Document Viewer is enabled by Piccel Technologies.
Piccel, Piccel Powered, Piccel Viewer, Piccel File Viewer, Piccel Document Viewer, Piccel PDF Viewer and the Piccel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Piccel Technologies Ltd.

HDMI

HIGH-DEFINITION MULTIMEDIA INTERFACE

HDMI, the HDMI logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing, LLC.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2009
- Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2009
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.
- Hot Pepper FooMoo ©RECRUIT
- Family Medical Encyclopedia ©Houken 2004
- Guide to Prescription Drugs ©Shigeru Kimura/Iyakuseidokenkyukai 2008
- Yahoo! Answers ©Yahoo Japan



EUPHONY™ (a comprehensive sound enhancement system utilizing a virtual sound source processing technology) is a trademark of DIMAGIC Co., Ltd.



Dynamic Range Adjustment is based on idrix technology by Apical Limited.

- Household Accounts™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.
- Kanji Grabber® is a registered trademark and English Grabber™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid®, FaceSolid®, MovieSolid®, FrameSolid®, PhotoScouter®, TrackSolid®, Morpho Effect Library™ and Morpho Motion Sensor™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

Handset employs Face Sensing Engine (FSE) developed by Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.



FSE and the FSE logo are trademarks of Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

AOSS™ is a trademark of BUFFALO Inc.

Chara Time and MOBILE KAKARICHO® are registered trademarks of Primeworks.

Machi-Uta® is a registered trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

S! Application, S! GPS Navi, Mobile Widget, S! Quick News, S! Information Channel, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, S! Addressbook Back-up, Weather Indicator, Double Number, Customized Screen, Video Call, Lifestyle-Appli, Input Memory, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Graphic Mail, S! Mail, Feeling Mail, Ichi Navi, Sky Mail, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, Secure Remote Lock, Auto Art and Keitai Wi-Fi are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

945SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 945SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.476 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>
 Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-ermf.org/> (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

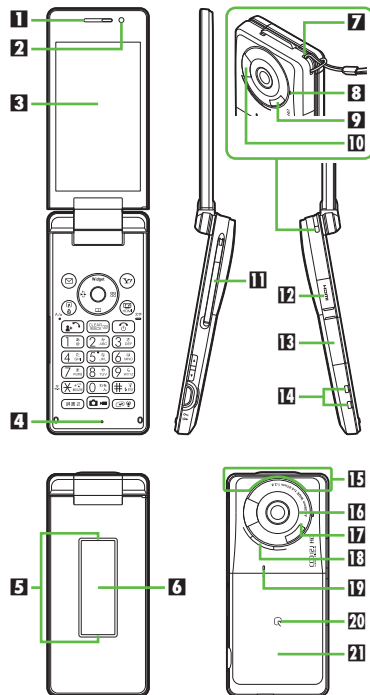
Handset Parts	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-2
Charging Battery	1-4
Power On/Off	1-7
Handset Power On/Off	1-7
Display & Indicators	1-8
Display	1-8
Indicators	1-10

Sub Display	1-12
Security Codes	1-13
Additional Functions	1-15

1

Getting Started

Parts & Functions



- 1 Earpiece
- 2 Light Sensor
- 3 Display
- 4 Microphone
- 5 Small Lights
- 6 Sub Display
- 7 Strap Eyelet
- 8 Recorder Microphone
- 9 Infrared Port
- 10 Mobile Light
- 11 TV Antenna
- 12 HDMI Port (with Port Cover)
- 13 External Device Port (with Port Cover)
- 14 Charging Terminals
- 15 Internal Antenna Location
- 16 Camera (lens cover)
- 17 Camera-in-Use Light
- 18 Speaker
- 19 Recorder Microphone
- 20 Logo
- 21 Battery Cover

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port Cover after Port use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

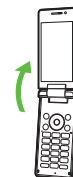
Display Positions

Clamshell Closed



Keep handset closed when not in use.

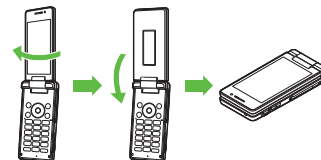
Clamshell Open



Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Viewer Position

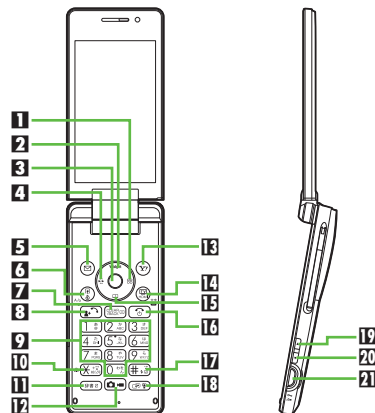
Handset is closed with Display facing outward.



Do not carry handset with Display in Viewer position. Display may be damaged.

Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with * via Set Key Shortcut as needed.



- 1 Multi Selector (right)** Open Icon View. Long Press to access last opened Icon View page*.
- 2 Multi Selector (up)** Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu*.
- 3 Center Key** Open Main Menu.

- 4 Multi Selector (left)** Open Call Log (All). Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth®*.
- 5 Mail Key** Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open SI Mail Composition window*.
- 6 Shortcuts & Spinguru Menu Key** Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to open Spinguru Menu.
- 7 Clear/Back Key** Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
- 8 Start & Rakutomo Link Key** Open Rakutomo Link window. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.
- 9 Keypad** Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.
- 10 * Key** Enter *, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to activate/cancel Wi-Fi.
- 11 Dictionary Key** Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate/cancel VeilView.
- 12 Camera Key** Activate mobile camera. Long Press to activate video camera.
- 13 Yahoo! Keitai Key** Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote*.
- 14 TV & HDMI Key** Activate TV. Long Press to start HDMI connection.

- 15 Multi Selector (down)** Open Phone Book. Long Press to open Exchange Profile menu*.
- 16 Power On/Off & End Key** Long Press to power handset off.
- 17 # Key** Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 18 Multi Job & Manner Key** Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

Side Keys

- 19 Volume Up Key** Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 20 Volume Down Key** **Open:** Show/hide Softkeys. **Viewer:** Show/hide Softkeys.
- 21 Keypad Lock & Shutter Key** **Closed:** Toggle Clock view. Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light. **Open:** Long Press to activate video camera. **Viewer:** Activate/cancel Keypad Lock. Long Press to activate video camera.

Multi Selector & Side Keys

- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press or	
Press or	
Press , , or	
Press or	

Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

Charging Battery Outside Japan

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Desktop Holder

Together with Desktop Holder, use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only.

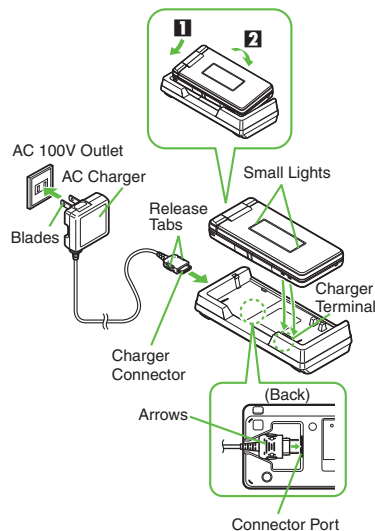
- In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- **AC Charger and Desktop Holder are not waterproofed or dustproofed. Do not charge battery while handset is wet.**
- Handset and AC Charger may warm while charging.

Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

Important Desktop Holder Usage Notes

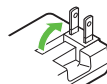
- Battery will charge regardless of Display position. However, do not attempt to open handset.
- Do not subject to force/pressure.



1 Insert Charger Connector into Desktop Holder

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

2 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



3 Place handset onto Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Small Lights illuminate red while charging.
- Small Lights go out when battery is full.

4 Disconnect 945SH from Desktop Holder

5 Unplug AC Charger

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

When Small Lights Flash

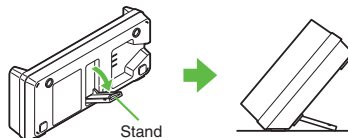
- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

Desktop Holder Materials

- Desktop Holder includes a part containing plant-derived resin, a new eco-friendly material which is expected to reduce CO₂ emissions and oil usage in the entire product life cycle compared to conventional petroleum resin.

Horizontal Use

Open Stand and set Desktop Holder upright; watch TV, etc. while charging battery. Open Stand until it clicks, then place Desktop Holder upright with charging terminals down.

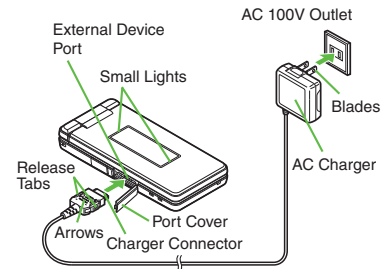


Important Stand Usage Notes

- Do not apply excessive force to Stand; may result in injury or breakage.
- Applying downward force on Desktop Holder may cause it to collapse.
- While using handset, take care not to tip over or drop Desktop Holder.
- Make sure Stand is open fully; otherwise Desktop Holder may fall over.

Charging with AC Charger Only

Insert Charger Connector into External Device Port. Using Desktop Holder helps secure External Device Port waterproofing and dustproofing.



USB Charge

Connect handset to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

- Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
- Handset must be on to charge battery.
- Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

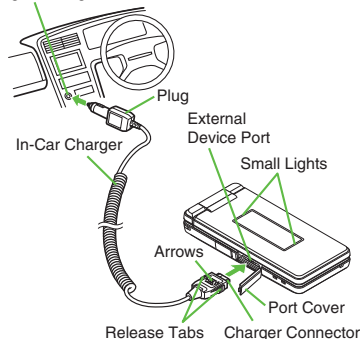
Disabling USB Charge

● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ Connectivity
 ➔ USB Charge ➔ ● ➔ Disable ➔ ●

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

Cigarette Lighter Socket

**1 Open Port Cover****2 Insert Charger Connector**

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket**4 Start car engine**

- Small Lights illuminate red while charging.
- Small Lights go out when battery is full.

5 Unplug Charger**6 Disconnect handset**

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

7 Replace Port Cover**Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes**

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 945SH for the first time:

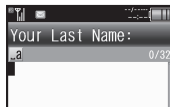
1 (Long)

- Waterproofing/dustproofing guidance appears following Power On Graphic; follow the steps below.

→ → → → → → **設定**
 → → **Language** → → **English**
 → → (Long) → (Long) →
 Change Menu window opens

2 Select option →

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.



- After Change Menu guidance, My Details setup starts.

3 Enter last name → → Enter first name →

- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 Yes or No →



Standby

- Choose **No** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed

- Insert USIM Card** appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , , or is pressed for the first time.



Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

1 Yes → → Retrieval starts

2

- When subscribed to Keitai Wi-Fi, BB mobilepoint setup menu opens; follow onscreen instructions.

Power Off

1 (Long)

- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Display

Standby

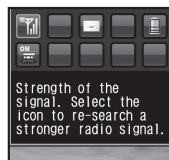


Hereafter, most screenshots omit Mobile Widgets and other icons.

Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

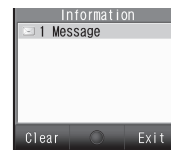
1 Tap indicator



- Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
- Long Touch indicators to view their descriptions.
- Tap to open menu/window (e.g., Battery Meter window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

Information

Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.



Information Window

Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press to open it.




Opening Information List Manually

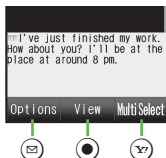
➔ Phone ➔ ➔ Information ➔

Clearing Information List

➔ Phone ➔ ➔ Information ➔ ➔ ➔ Yes ➔

Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to , , and  appear at the bottom of Display in portrait orientation with clamshell open.



Using Touch Panel

In clamshell open (landscape) or Viewer position, Softkeys (shown right) appear. Tap a Softkey to execute assigned function/operation. Some key assignments may vary with Display position/window content.


Portrait Orientation





Landscape Orientation



Display Saving

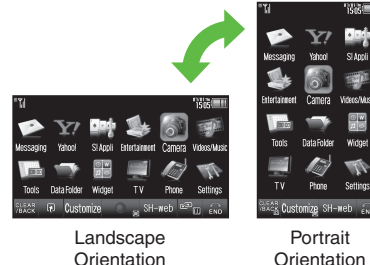
Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key (except ) to activate it.

Backlight

- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press  -  to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).
- Display goes dark during a call. (Backlight does not turn off first.)

Display Rotation

Sensor detects handset movement. In Viewer position, Display orientation changes with handset orientation. Display orientation for clamshell open is fixed by default; set to rotate as needed.



Indicators

Display Indicators

In Dual Mode, line type appears bottom right of some indicators.

Basic Status

1		Within 3G range
2		Within GSM range
3		International roaming in progress
4		Signal strength ¹
5		Battery strength ²

¹The more bars the better.

²Battery strength % (appears when Display activates, etc.) is an approximation.

Function Status

1		Active S! Application*
		Paused S! Application*
		Music playback in progress
		TV recording in progress (handset)
		TV recording in progress (Memory Card)
2		Memory Card inserted
		Accessing Memory Card
		Reading Memory Card
		Formatting Memory Card
		TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
3		Compass Indicator
4		Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth®)
5		Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

*Appears gold for some S! Applications.

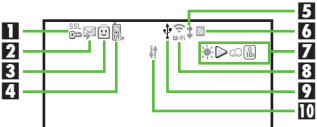
Notifications

1		Unread mail
		Unread Delivery Report
2		Answer Phone active & message recorded
		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3		New Voicemail
4		Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5		S! Appli Notification
6		Contents Key received
7		Unread S! Information Channel info
		Software Update result
8		Unread S! Quick News info
		Unread S! Friend's Status notification

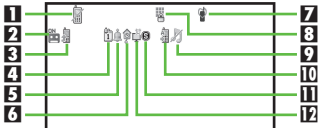
Warnings

1		Mail memory low
2		Message delivery failure
3		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

■ Transmissions



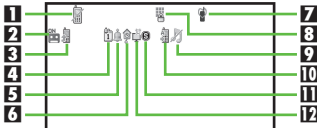
1	SSL	SSL browsing in progress ¹
2	Packet	Packet transmission protocol ready
3	Receiving mail	Receiving mail
4	Sending mail	Sending mail
5	S! Friend's Status online	S! Friend's Status online
6	Positioning in progress ²	Positioning in progress ²
7	Software Update in progress	Software Update in progress
8	Wi-Fi transmission in progress	Wi-Fi transmission in progress
9	Keitai Wi-Fi available	Keitai Wi-Fi available
10	RSS-compatible site	RSS-compatible site
11	Weather Indicator	Weather Indicator
12	Connected to Wi-Fi network ³	Connected to Wi-Fi network ³



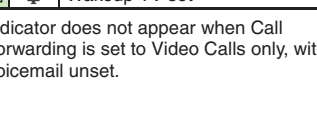
1	USB Cable connected	USB Cable connected
2	USB transmission in progress	USB transmission in progress
3	Infrared transmission in progress	Infrared transmission in progress
4	Infrared file transfer in progress	Infrared file transfer in progress
5	Bluetooth® transmission ready	Bluetooth® transmission ready
6	Bluetooth® transmission in progress (appears for multiple connections)	Bluetooth® transmission in progress (appears for multiple connections)
7	Bluetooth® talk in progress	Bluetooth® talk in progress
8	IC Transmission in progress	IC Transmission in progress
9	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
10	PC Site Browser in use	PC Site Browser in use
11	Direct Browser in use	Direct Browser in use
12	Infrared transmission ready	Infrared transmission ready

¹Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.²Flashes while positioning.³The more blue bars the stronger the connection.

■ Settings



1	Offline Mode active	Offline Mode active
2	Answer Phone active	Answer Phone active
3	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: Always) [*]	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: Always) [*]



4	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
5	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
6	Alarm set	Alarm set
7	Hour Minder active	Hour Minder active
8	Manner mode active	Manner mode active
9	Drive mode active	Drive mode active
10	Original mode active	Original mode active
11	VeilView active	VeilView active
12	Keypad Lock active	Keypad Lock active
13	IC Card Lock active	IC Card Lock active
14	Ringtone (Silent)	Ringtone (Silent)
15	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)	Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
16	Vibration for incoming Voice/Video Calls active	Vibration for incoming Voice/Video Calls active
17	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
18	Show Secret Data active	Show Secret Data active
19	Function Lock (Once) active	Function Lock (Once) active
20	Wakeup TV set	Wakeup TV set

^{*}Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

Sub Display

View date/time and the following indicators with clamshell closed.

Activating Backlight

1



- Press  to toggle view (panels).

Indicators

Basic Status

1



2


















1 Signal strength*







2 Battery strength

*The more bars the better.






Notifications

	Missed Calls
	Answer Phone message recorded
	Missed Call Notification
	New Voicemail
	Unread mail
	Unread Delivery Report
	Contents Key received
	Unread S! Information Channel info
	Weather Indicator update
	Weather Indicator
	Location Info request
	Pedometer target achieved
	Videos/Music menu update
	S! Appli Notification
	Unread S! Friend's Status notification


Warnings

	Message delivery failure
	S! Information Channel info reception failure
	IP Service connection failure
	Weather Indicator update failure
	Public wireless LAN auto authentication failure
	Wi-Fi disabled

Handset Status

	Alarm
	Schedule Alarm
	Task Alarm
	TV Alarm (watch)
	TV Alarm (record)

Advanced

-  ● Changing Backlight illumination time ● Changing Clock pattern ● Hiding new received messages ● Viewing new messages ● Checking e-money balance (And more on P.1-15)

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use. (Set Handset Code and Administrator Code beforehand.)

- Guide descriptions are based on the assumption that Handset Code and Administrator Code are set.
- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code*	Use or change some functions
Administrator Code*	Required for Reset Settings and Reset All
Center Access Code (Network Password)	Four-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines, change service options, or set call restrictions

*Setable on handset.

If Security Code is Unset

- Code setup message/window appears whenever Security Code is required.

Incorrect Code Entry

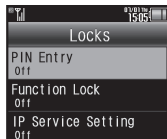
- Message appears for incorrect code entries; retry.
- Incoming/outgoing call restriction settings will be locked if incorrect code is entered three times consecutively during the setting. To resolve, Center Access Code (Network Password) must be changed.
 - If you have previously changed Network Password on a SoftBank handset, enter the latest code.

Saving Handset Code

Enter four to eight digits.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔

2 **Locks** ➔



Locks Menu

3 **Handset Code Settings** ➔

4 **Save Handset Code** ➔

5 **Enter Handset Code** ➔

6 **Re-enter Handset Code** ➔

Changing Handset Code

After **4**, enter current Handset Code ➔

➔ **Enter new Handset Code** ➔

➔ **Re-enter new Handset Code** ➔

Saving Administrator Code

Enter four to eight digits.

- 1 In Locks menu, **Administrator Setting** ➔ ●
- 2 **Register Administrator Code** ➔ ●
- 3 Enter Administrator Code ➔ ●
- 4 Re-enter Administrator Code ➔ ●

Changing Administrator Code

After 2, enter current Administrator Code

- ➔ ● ➔ Enter new Administrator Code
- ➔ ● ➔ Re-enter new Administrator Code
- ➔ ●

Need/UnNeed Setting

Once Handset Code is set, code entry is omitted for some operations by default. For enhanced security, change Need/UnNeed Setting to require Handset Code entry whenever possible; follow these steps:

- 1 In Locks menu, **Handset Code Settings** ➔ ●
- 2 **Need/UnNeed Setting** ➔ ●
- 3 **Need** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

Sub Display








■ View Settings

Changing Backlight illumination time	● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Duration</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ●
Changing Clock pattern	● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Clock Pattern</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select panel ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ●
Changing Clock font	● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Clock Type</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select panel ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ●
Showing specified information below Clock	● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Topic View</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select panel ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ●

■ Handset Responses

Hiding new received messages	● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Messages</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Not Display</i> ➔ ●
Hiding caller info	● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Caller Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ ●
Selecting images for incoming calls, etc.	<p>Start Here ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, <i>Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sub-Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>System Graphics</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Customized Screens may be unetable depending on item. <p>Preset Graphics Select pattern ➔ ●</p> <p>Customized Screen <i>Customized Screen</i> ➔ ●</p> <p>None <i>Off</i> ➔ ●</p>

■ Operations

Viewing new messages	<p>With Backlight off,  ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use  to scroll message text; press  to view next messages. Available with clamshell closed.
Checking e-money balance	<p>With clamshell closed,  (Long) ➔ Balance appears ➔  ➔ Balance disappears</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use  to view balances of listed entries. Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand. Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.

Interface & Storage	2-2
Handset Interface & Media File Storage	2-2
Accessing Functions.....	2-3
Touch Panel	2-4
Using Touch Panel.....	2-4
Menu Operations.....	2-6
Main Menu.....	2-6
Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)	2-9
Spinguru Menu.....	2-10
Using Spinguru Menu	2-11
Accessing Functions.....	2-13
Function Shortcuts	2-13
Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job) ...	2-14
Standby Shortcuts	2-15
Icon View	2-16

Viewer Position	2-17
Viewer Position Setup	2-17
Motion Control	2-18
Keypad Lock	2-20
Activating/Canceling Keypad Lock ...	2-20
Mobile Manners.....	2-21
Basic Tools.....	2-22
My Details & Basic Tools	2-22
Double Number.....	2-23
Using Double Number	2-23
Modes.....	2-24
Additional Functions	2-26

2

Basic Operations



Handset Interface & Media File Storage

Handset Operations

Use handset keys, Touch Panel or Motion Control.

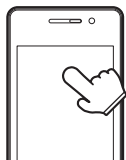
Handset Keys

Use Keypad, etc. with clamshell open; supports all handset operations.



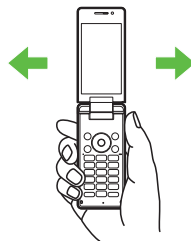
Touch Panel

Touch menu items, Softkeys or icons in clamshell open or Viewer position.



Motion Control

Move handset (e.g., shake it left or right, turn it over, etc.) to access functions, enlarge/reduce fonts or images, navigate functions, and more. (Complete setup beforehand.)

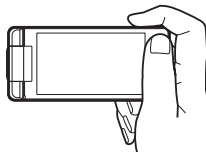


Viewer Position

Use handset in the following styles in Viewer position.

Digital Camera & Portable TV

Hold handset in landscape; press Keypad Lock & Shutter Key to release shutter, or watch TV in widescreen.



Compact Touch Panel Device

Intuitive Touch Panel interface supports most handset operations.



Media File Storage

While a Memory Card is inserted, captured images, downloads and some other files are saved to the card; change this setting in each function as needed.

- My Pictograms and Graphic Mail templates are saved to handset.
- Without a Memory Card, files are saved to handset automatically.



Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

Main Menu



Repeat menu item selection.

Select menu items

Use shortcuts

Long Press

Spinguru Menu



Access recommended/frequently used functions or operation history, etc.

Shortcuts



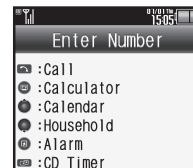
Access assigned functions (changeable).

Standby Shortcuts



Save functions to Standby or Icon View.

Quick Operations



Enter numbers to access functions. To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.



Using Touch Panel

2

Basic Operations

Touch Display to select menu items, open functions, scroll pages, etc.
Available in clamshell open or Viewer position (regardless of orientation).

Basic Operations

Tap



Tap item to open corresponding function;
execute Softkey functions/operations.

Double Tap

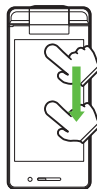
Tap Display twice in rapid succession
(within approximately 0.6 seconds).

Long Touch



Touch item for 1+ seconds to execute
corresponding function/operation.

Drag



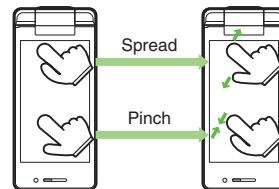
Touch and drag to move item or scribble/
sketch; release when complete.

Swipe



Swipe Display to scroll.

Spread & Pinch



Spread or pinch fingers across Display to
enlarge or reduce images, etc.

Advanced

● Enabling Touch vibration ● Disabling Touch Panel (P.2-26)



Operational Examples

Selection & Execution

Tap item to open or execute corresponding function/operation.



Tap **Data Folder**

The result is the same as selecting an item with and pressing .

Two Taps

When corresponding Options menu is available, etc., tapping item may only select (highlight) it; tap the item again to execute function/operation.



Tap **Music** twice



Music folder opens

Screen Scroll

To see items outside Display area, drag or swipe in opposite direction.



Swipe right



Left portion appears

Enlarge & Reduce

Spread or pinch to enlarge or reduce images, etc.

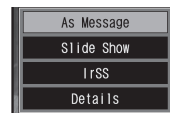


Enlarged

- Double-tapping images, etc. may also enlarge/reduce them.
- On Internet page or before saving captured image, Long Touch area/portion to enlarge it.

Open Menus

Long Touch Display to open menu.



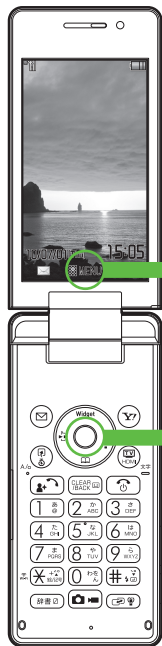
Important Touch Panel Usage Notes

- Touch Panel may not respond in these situations:
 - Use with gloves/long fingernails
 - Use of pens, pencils or sharp objects
 - Use with objects on/against Display
 - When Display is wet
- To prevent malfunctions, do not:
 - Touch Display with wet fingers
 - Use if Display is wet
 - Subject Display to force/pressure
 - Place labels or stickers over Display
- Calibrate Touch Panel (**P.2-8**) to improve response.



Main Menu

Opening Main Menu



■ Touch Panel

■ Handset Key

Window Description



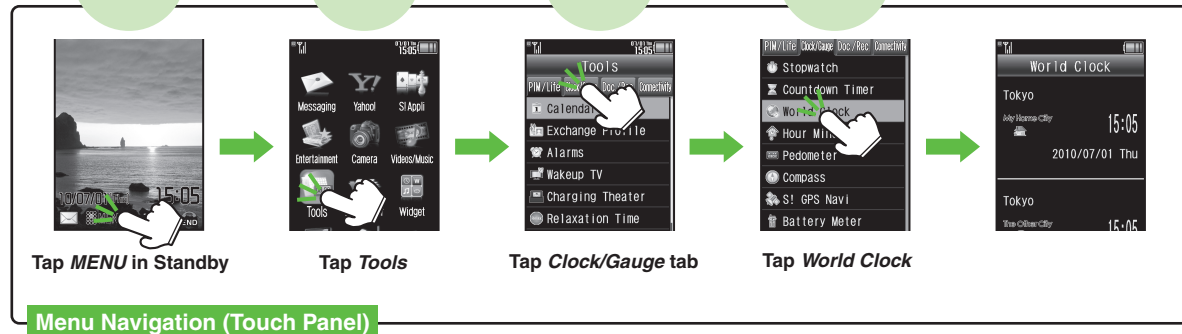
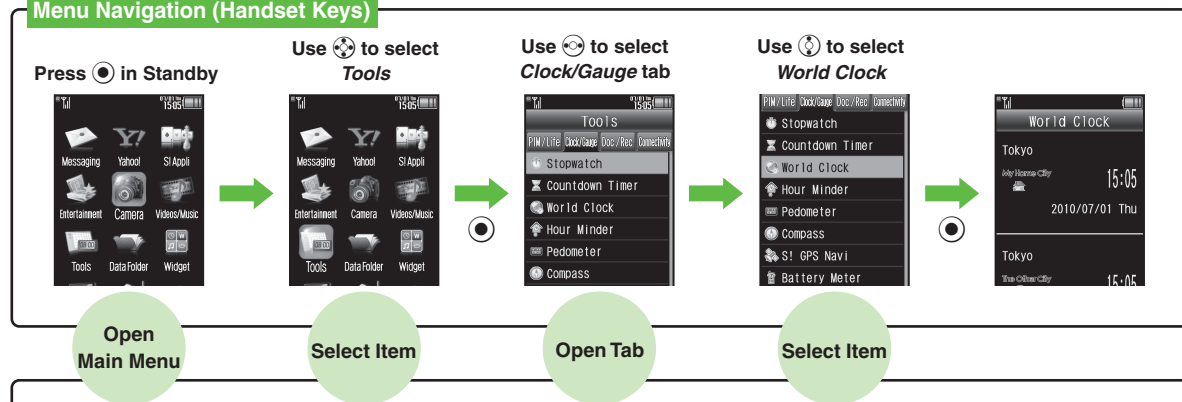
Main Menu Items

Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Yahoo!	Browse the Internet
S! Appli	Use S! Applications including games
Entertainment	Receive news, play/download media files, etc.
Camera	Capture images or record video
Videos/Music	Access various media services
Tools	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
Widget	Use Mobile Widgets
TV	Watch/record TV programs
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.



Follow these steps to open **World Clock** via handset keys or Touch Panel:
(Touch Panel navigation screenshots are based on Viewer position.)

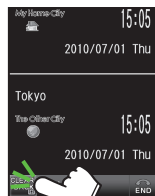
Menu Navigation (Handset Keys)



Menu Navigation (Touch Panel)



Escape/Return (Handset Keys)






Press Press 
(Standby returns)Navigate
BackReturn to
StandbyTap **CLEAR/BACK**Tap **END**

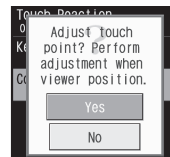
Standby returns

Escape/Return (Touch Panel)

Calibrating Touch Panel

Calibrate Touch Panel to improve response.
Hold handset normally during calibration.

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ 
Phone/
- 2 **Touch Panel** ➔ 
- 3 **Correct Touch Panel** ➔ 



- 4 **Yes** ➔ 
• Follow onscreen instructions.

Undo Calibration

- If calibration does not improve response,
follow these steps to restore default setting:

After 2, 

Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Call Log, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call Voicemail, My Details, Rakutomo Link, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Album, Scan Barcode, Scan Card, Kanji/English Grabber, Review
Convenient Tool	Calendar, Exchange Profile, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! GPS Navi, Pedometer, Compass, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
Data Folder	-
TV	-

While Simple Menu is active, some operations in Standby are disabled.

Activating Simple Menu

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In **Sound/Display menu**, **Change Menu** ➔



- 2 **Simple Menu** ➔

While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.



Canceling Simple Menu



- ➔ **Convenient Tool** ➔ ➔ **Change Menu** ➔ ➔ **Standard Menu** ➔



Spinguru Menu

Basics

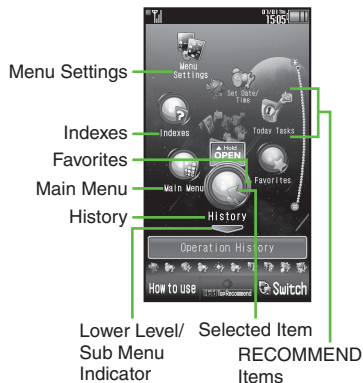
Long Press  to open Spinguru Menu; use  to select functions suitable for time of day/situation, or frequently used/ recently opened files/records, etc.




- To open Spinguru Menu while using functions, press  twice; menu items available for the current function also appear.
- Alternatively, make a circle on Standby Display to open Spinguru Menu; repeat motion for further operations.
- Alternatively, in Viewer position, Long Touch Softkey with  to open Spinguru Menu.

Menu Description





Example: Spinguru Menu opened in Standby

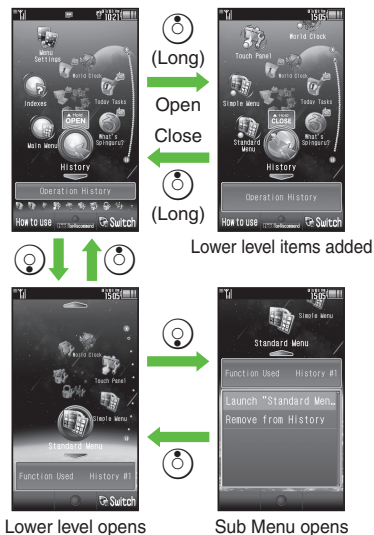
- Favorites (gateway to frequently used functions) appears from the second day after the first use of handset.



- Press  or  to jump left/right by seven items; Long Press  to return to initial item.

Menu Navigation

Press  when  appears to access lower level/Sub Menu; press  (when  appears) to return.



Using Spinguru Menu

Opening Functions

General Items

1 (Long)



- Spinguru Menu opens.

2 Select item



3

- Menu/window opens.

Deleting Functions from Spinguru Menu

After 2, 3 ➔ **Remove from Recommended Functions** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

Advanced

- Sorting Favorites items ● Deleting all Favorites items ● Deleting all History items ● Restoring deleted general items (P.2-26)

Favorites & History

1 In Spinguru Menu, Favorites or History



2



- Lower level opens.

3 Select item

4

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Deleting Functions from Favorites or History

After 3, 4 ➔ **Remove from Favorites or Remove from History** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

Main Menu

1 In Spinguru Menu, Main Menu



2

3 Select item ➔ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

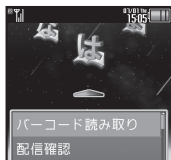


Indexes (Japanese)

Search for functions by initial character of terms or keywords.

1 In Spinguru Menu,  Indexes2 

- Character icons appear.

3  Select icon ➔ 4  Select function ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Spinguru Menu Settings




Follow these steps to reset Spinguru Menu:

1 In Spinguru Menu,  Menu Settings2 

3 Initialize Spinguru Menu

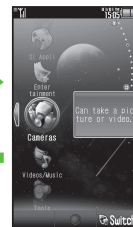
4 Yes ➔ 

Toggling View

Press  to toggle Spinguru Menu between linear and spiral views. In linear view, press  to access lower level items/Sub Menu; press  to return.




Spinguru Menu
(linear view)



Lower level/
Sub Menu opens

Opening Help

Press  in Spinguru Menu to open operational instructions.



Function Shortcuts

Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.

1



2

- Menu/window opens.

Changing Default Shortcuts

In , select numbered function ➔

➔ **Assign Function** ➔ ➔

Select menu item ➔ ➔ Select new item ➔

- To assign menu items, select one and press .

Assigning Files & Folders

In , select numbered function ➔

➔ **Assign Data** ➔ ➔ Select file/folder ➔

- For folders, select **Set this folder** and press .

Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press , or to access assigned functions.

	Open S! Mail Composition window
	Open PC Site Browser menu
	Open Exchange Profile menu
	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
	Access last opened Icon View page
	Activate Familink Remote

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to (Long Press):

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/**

2 **Set Key Shortcut** ➔ ➔ **Long press** ➔

3 **From Appli** ➔

4 **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, **Calculator** ➔

Bookmark

In , **From Bookmark** ➔ ➔

Select title ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Infrared, Show Secret Data, Etc. On/Off

In , **From Other** ➔ ➔ Select item ➔

Canceling Assigned Function

In , **Off** ➔

Advanced

- Changing item order Restoring default shortcuts (P.2-26)




Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

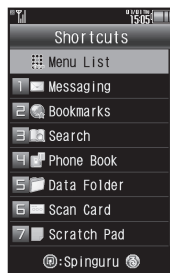
While browsing the Internet








- Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows.
- Multi Job is disabled while  (gold) appears.

Using Multi Job

- ① In a function window, .
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press .



- ② Select function  
 - Menu/window opens.
- ③ To toggle active windows, 
- ④   **Multi Job ends**
 - If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.



Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access.

Saving Shortcuts to Standby

1  ➔  ➔ **Paste Icon** ➔ 



Widget Tab

Standby Shortcut Tab




2 **Select item** ➔ 

- Corresponding icon appears.
- >> appears when more items are available.

3  **Specify target location**
➔ 

Saving from Menu/Window

- Follow these steps in Options menu:
(Available when **Set as StbyShortcut** appears.)





Set as StbyShortcut ➔  ➔
Standby Screen ➔ 

Using Shortcuts

1  ➔  **Select icon** ➔ 

- Menu/window opens or command is executed.

Unlocking Temporarily

 ➔  ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

Removing Shortcuts from Standby

1  ➔  **Select icon** ➔ 

2 **Remove** ➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Sorting icons ● Moving icons ● Moving icons to front/back ● Removing multiple icons at once ● Locking icons (P.2-26)



Icon View

Save shortcuts to functions, files, folders, widgets, etc. to Icon View for easy access.

Saving Shortcuts to Icon View

- If selected page is full, remove icons first.
- Installed widgets are saved automatically.

1



Icon View Page

- Press or to open next or previous page. (Press in **Page 1** to return to Standby.)

2

3 **Select tab** ➔ **Select item**
➔

- Corresponding icon appears.
- >> appears when more items are available.

4 **Specify target location**
➔

Saving from Menu/Window

- Follow these steps in Options menu:
(Available when **Set as StryShortcut** appears.)

Set as StryShortcut ➔ ➔ **Select page or New Page** ➔ ➔ **Specify target location** ➔

When Five or More Pages Exist

- A confirmation appears after 1. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .
- To disable confirmation, press .

Using Shortcuts

1 On Icon View page, select icon ➔

- Press or to open next or previous page. (Press in **Page 1** to return to Standby.)

Accessing Last Opened Page

(Long)

Showing Hidden Icons Temporarily

[Icon View Page] ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

Removing Shortcuts

1 On Icon View page, select icon ➔ (Long)

2 **Cancel Icon** ➔

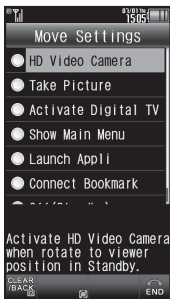
Advanced

- Moving icons ● Removing multiple icons at once ● Editing page names ● Hiding icons (And more on **P.2-27**)



Viewer Position Setup

Menu below appears the first time Display is rotated to Viewer position; set handset to automatically execute one of the following actions upon rotating Display to Viewer position:



Viewer Position Menu

■ Actions

HD Video Camera	Activate video camera
Take Picture	Activate mobile camera
Activate Digital TV	Activate TV
Show Main Menu	Open Main Menu
Launch Appli	Access assigned function
Connect Bookmark	Access saved URL
Off(Standby)	Keep Standby

Advanced

● Changing function assigned to Launch Appli in Move Settings ● Changing URL assigned to Connect Bookmark in Move Settings (P.2-27)

1 In Viewer Position Menu, tap item

- Setting is applied and Viewer position setup option confirmation appears.

2 Tap Yes or No

- Selection appears.

Take Picture

- In Photo Viewfinder, Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level. Follow these steps to turn setting off:

[Photo Viewfinder] Tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Mobile Light** twice ➔ Tap **Off** twice

Launch Appli or Connect Bookmark

- Handset accesses the assigned function or URL; change function/URL as needed.

From Standby

● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Viewer Position** ➔ ● ➔ **Move Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ●

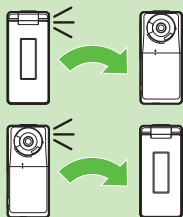


Motion Control

Motion Sensor tracks handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, access functions, etc.

- Cancel Keypad Lock and activate Display first. (Not necessary for activating Quick Silent.)
- Adjust Motion Sensor (**P.2-28**) before using Motion Control for the first time.
- Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

Turn Over



Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

Ringer

Incoming Calls,
Alarms, etc.

Vibration

Incoming Calls,
Alarms, etc.

- Some tones may not be silenced.

Open Quick Shortcut

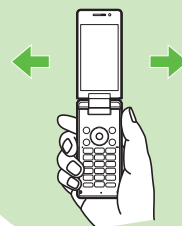
Shake handset left and right approximately three times in Standby to access assigned functions.

- Change assigned functions as needed.

Re-search Signal

Portrait Orientation
Landscape Orientation

Shake Left/Right



Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

Music

Music Player

Channels

Digital TV

Images

Data Folder
(Pictures)

Pages

Document
Viewer

Multi Job

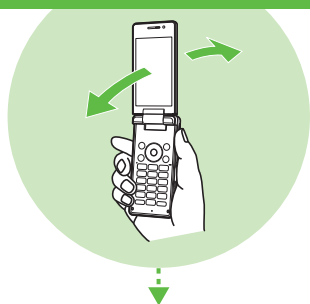
Shake to the left or right to toggle active windows.

Toggle Windows

Multi Job



Shake Forward or Backward



Zoom In/Zoom Out

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

Fonts

Yahoo! Keitai
Message Window

Zoom Image

Data Folder
(Pictures)

Zoom Page

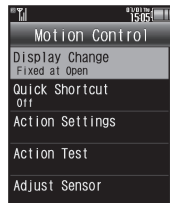
PC Site Browser
Direct Browser
Document Viewer

Toggling Motion Control On/Off

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔

Phone

2 **Motion Control** ➔



Motion Control Menu

3 **Action Settings** ➔

4 **Select function** ➔

5 **On or Off** ➔

Enabling Quick Shortcut

1 **In Motion Control menu,**
Quick Shortcut ➔

2 **Switch On/Off** ➔

3 **On** ➔

Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily

Enter Handset Code ➔ Shake handset left or right

- Close handset (clamshell closed) in Standby to cancel Show Secret Data.

Important Motion Control Usage Notes

- Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid unintended results. (For better recognition, shake handset straight without swinging your arm.)
- Motion Control may be unavailable while handset is ringing/vibrating.
- Be sure there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage. Do not shake handset roughly; handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

Advanced

- Changing Display rotation method
- Changing Quick Shortcut items
- Deleting Quick Shortcut items
- Restoring default Quick Shortcut items
- Practicing Motion Control actions
- Adjusting Motion Sensor (P.2-28)



Activating/Canceling Keypad Lock

Activating

Prevent accidental operation/function activation in Viewer position.

1 In Viewer position,

- Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates.

When Keypad Lock is Active

- Handset keys and Touch Panel are locked.

Canceling

Open handset (clamshell open). To cancel Keypad Lock in Viewer position, follow these steps:

1

- Display activates.

2

- Keypad Lock deactivates.
- Alternatively, swipe down on ▼ **Unlock**.

Automatic Keypad Lock (Viewer Position)

- In Viewer position, Display goes dark and Keypad Lock activates after a period of inactivity; follow the steps above to cancel it.

Advanced



-  ● Canceling Keypad Lock upon Display activation ● Changing Keypad Lock cancellation method (P.2-28)

Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Power it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, buses, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.





1 (Long)




- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 945SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.
- To unmute Speaker temporarily while playing music, etc., follow these steps:

During playback,  ➔  ➔  ➔ **Yes or No ➔ **

Canceling Manner Mode

 (Long)

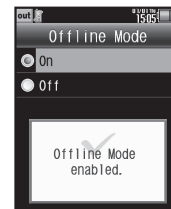
Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Network**


2 **Offline Mode** ➔

3 **On** ➔



- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode

In **Off** ➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Changing handset modes ● Creating a custom mode ● Resetting Mode Settings ● Suppressing Manner mode audio output confirmation (P.2-28)




My Details & Basic Tools

VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.

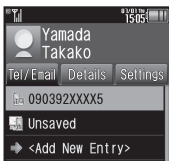
1  (Long)

Canceling VeilView

 (Long)





My Number

1  ➔ 



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Editing My Details

After 1,  (select tab) ➔ Select item ➔  ➔ Select item ➔  ➔ Edit ➔ 

Pen Light

1 With clamshell closed,  (Long)

- Mobile Light illuminates.

2 Side Key ➔ Mobile Light goes out

Important Pen Light Usage Note

- Do not shine Pen Light in eyes.

Battery Meter

1  ➔ Tools ➔  ➔ 

2 Battery Meter ➔ 

- Approximate battery strength appears.

Battery Strength %

- 100% may not appear even when battery is full. This is by design; not a malfunction.



Phone Help

1  ➔ Tools ➔  ➔ 






Doc./Rec.

2 Phone Help ➔ 

3 Select item ➔ 

- For **Indicators**, select a category and press . For **What's Spinguru?** (Japanese), select a menu item and press .

Advanced

-  Changing VeilView pattern/density
-  Clearing My Details
-  Selecting My Details items to send
-  Toggling My Details in Dual Mode
-  Changing battery strength indicator pattern (P.2-29)

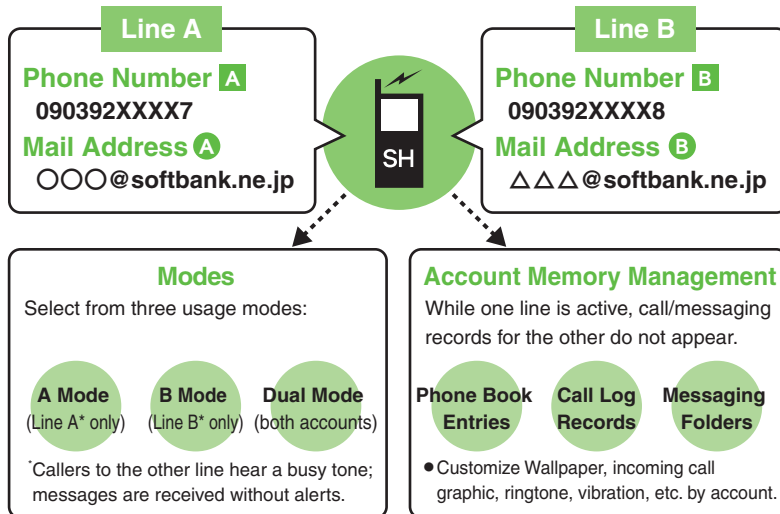


Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Outside Japan, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
- For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses



Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Phone/**
- 2 **Double Number** →
- 3 **Switch On/Off** →
- 4 **On** →
- 5 **Yes** →

C canceling Double Number

In **4**, **Off** → → **5**

- When Double Number is canceled:
 - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
 - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
 - Double Number account is not affected.



Modes

Activate **A Mode** to use Line A only, **B Mode** to use Line B only, or **Dual Mode** to use both accounts.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions

- Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
- When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions

- Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
- S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable.

Advanced

- Renaming Double Number modes
- Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line
- Hiding Internet connection confirmation (P.2-29)



Dual Mode

Receive Calls to Both Accounts

- Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

Phone Book Entries

Specify A, B or Dual.

Messaging

Select Line A or Line B.
Sender Address changes accordingly.

Calling

Select Line A or Line B.
Caller ID changes accordingly.

- Line indicators appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

Switching Modes

1  (Long)

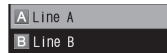
2 **Select mode** ➡ ●

- For **B Mode**, a confirmation appears.

3 **Yes** ➡ ●

In Dual Mode

During an operation, if prompt window below appears, select a line and press ●.



If customizable by line, line indicator appears bottom right; press ⌵ to switch.



If line selection is otherwise required, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

-  ● Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode
- Setting main line for Dual Mode (P.2-29)



Touch Panel

Enabling Touch vibration	<p>Start Here → Settings → Phone → Touch Panel → Touch Reaction → See below</p> <p>Enabling Always On(Vibrating) → On</p> <p>Enabling Except in Manner Mode On(Except Manner Mode) → On</p>
	<p>Disabling Touch Panel → Settings → Phone → Touch Panel → Switch On/Off → Off → Off</p>

Spinguru Menu

Sorting Favorites items	<p>Open Spinguru Menu → Menu Settings → Sort Favorites → Yes → Yes</p>
Deleting all Favorites items	<p>Open Spinguru Menu → Menu Settings → Delete All Favorites → Yes → Yes</p>
Deleting all History items	<p>Open Spinguru Menu → Menu Settings → Delete All Histories → Yes → Yes</p>
Restoring deleted general items	<p>Start Here → Open Spinguru Menu → Menu Settings → See below</p> <p>All Items Restore All Recommended Functions Deleted → Yes → Yes</p> <p>One Item Select Restore XX → Yes → Yes</p>

Shortcuts

Changing item order	<p>Settings → Select numbered function → Move → Select target location → Move</p>
Restoring default shortcuts	<p>Settings → Select numbered function → Set to Default → Yes → Yes</p>

Standby Shortcut

Operations in Standby

Sorting icons	<p>Operation → Sort Icon → Sort Icon → Select option → Sort Icon</p> <p>• Widgets may also be sorted depending on the size.</p>
Moving icons	<p>Select icon → Operation → Move → Specify target location → Move</p>
Moving icons to front/back	<p>Select icon → Operation → To Front or To Back → Move</p>
Removing multiple icons at once	<p>Operate from List → Remove → Shortcut → Select icon → Complete selection → Yes → Yes</p>
Locking icons	<p>Settings → Lock Settings → On → On</p> <p>• Handset Code is required to re-select Off.</p>



Icon View	
Moving icons	→ (Long) → Move → → Select icon → → Specify target location → →
Pasting to Standby	→ Select icon (widget) → (Long) → Set as StbyShortcut → → Specify target location →
Removing multiple icons at once	<div>Start Here → (Long) → Operate from List → → See below</div> <div>Selected Icons</div> <div>Select & Remove → → Select tab → Select icon → (✓) → Complete selection → Yes → Yes → </div> <div>Whole Page</div> <div>Remove All → → Select page → Yes → Yes → </div>
Switching pages	→ (Long) → Select page →
Changing page order	→ (Long) → Move Page → → Select target location →
Inserting pages	→ (Long) → Insert Page → → Insert Previous or Insert Next →
Editing page names	<div>Start Here → (Long) → Settings/Manage → → Change Page Name → → See below</div> <div>Renaming</div> <div>Select page → → Enter name → </div> <div>Resetting All Page Names</div> <div> → Yes → </div>

Hiding icons	→ (Long) → Settings/Manage → → Hide Icons → → Select page → → On → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code is required to re-select Off.
Opening properties	→ Select icon (widget) → (Long) → Details →
Deleting invalid icons	→ (Long) → Settings/Manage → → Remove Invalid Icon → → Yes →
Accessing last opened page with	→ → Settings → → Key Settings → → Last Visited Page →

Viewer Position Setup

Changing function assigned to Launch Appli in Move Settings	→ Settings → → Phone/ → Viewer Position → → Set Appli → → Select menu item → → Select new item →
Changing URL assigned to Connect Bookmark in Move Settings	→ Settings → → Phone/ → Viewer Position → → Set Bookmark → → Select title → → Yes →



Motion Control

Changing Display rotation method	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Motion Control → ● → Display Change → ● → Select method → ●</p>
Changing Quick Shortcut items	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Motion Control → ● → Quick Shortcut → ● → Shortcut Entry → ● → Portrait or Landscape → ● → Select menu item → ● → Select new item → ●</p> <p>● To assign menu items, select one and press ☺.</p>
Deleting Quick Shortcut items	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Motion Control → ● → Quick Shortcut → ● → Shortcut Entry → ● → Portrait or Landscape → ☺ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Restoring default Quick Shortcut items	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Motion Control → ● → Quick Shortcut → ● → Shortcut Entry → ● → ☺ → Reset Settings → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Practicing Motion Control actions	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Motion Control → ● → Action Test → ● → Select item → ●</p> <p>● Follow onscreen instructions.</p>
Adjusting Motion Sensor	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Motion Control → ● → Adjust Sensor → ●</p> <p>● Follow onscreen instructions.</p> <p>● Avoid adjusting Motion Sensor near metal/magnetic objects or aboard trains or in vehicles.</p>

Keypad Lock



Canceling Keypad Lock upon Display activation	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Touch Panel → ● → Keypad Lock → ● → Set Keypad Lock → ● → Simple Lock → ●</p>
Changing Keypad Lock cancellation method	<p>● → Settings → ● → ☺ Phone/ → Touch Panel → ● → Keypad Lock → ● → Keypad Unlock → ● → Select method → ●</p>

Mode Settings


















Changing handset modes	<p>[Start Here] ● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → See below</p> <p>Selecting a Handset Mode</p> <p>Select mode → ●</p>
	<p>Customizing Handset Modes</p> <p>Select mode → ☺ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</p> <p>● Not available for Normal mode.</p>
Creating a custom mode	<p>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → Original → ☺ → Select item → ● → Adjust settings</p>
Resetting Mode Settings	<p>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → Select mode → ☺ → Yes → ●</p>
Suppressing Manner mode audio output confirmation	<p>● → Settings → ● → In Sound/Display menu, Mode Settings → ● → Manner → ☺ → Audio Confirmation → ● → Do not Show → ●</p>








VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	Start Here → Settings → In Sound/Display menu, Display → VeilView → See below
	Pattern Pattern Setting → Select pattern
	Pattern Scale Scale Setting → Select scale • Scale is unselectable for some patterns.
	Density Density Setting → Adjust density • For Density:2 or Density:3 , use  before pressing  to adjust the pattern appearance for straight view.










My Details

Clearing My Details	 →  →  → Reset My Details →  → Yes → 
Selecting My Details items to send	 →  →  → Set Send Items →  → Select item →  ( / ) → Complete selection → 
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	 →  →  → Switch to B or Switch to A → 















Battery Meter

Changing battery strength indicator pattern	 → Settings →  → In Sound/Display menu, Display →  → Mini Battery →  → Select pattern → 
	• Battery strength (appears as a percentage) is for reference only.
















Double Number

All Modes	
Renaming Double Number modes	 → Settings →  →  Phone/  → Double Number →  → Mode Name →  → Select mode →  → Enter name →  → Select icon → 

A Mode & B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	 → Settings →  →  Phone/  → Double Number →  → Show Missed →  → On → 
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	 → Settings →  →  Phone/  → Double Number →  → Packet Warning →  → Off → 
	• Available for B Mode.

Dual Mode

Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	 → Settings →  →  Phone/  → Double Number →  → Reject By Line →  → Select line →  → On → 
Setting main line for Dual Mode	 → Settings →  →  Phone/  → Double Number →  → Send Priority →  → Select option → 



Fonts	3-2
Customizing Fonts	3-2
Wallpaper	3-3
Customized Screen.....	3-4
Customized Screen (Japanese)	3-4
Sounds & Alerts	3-5
Customizing Handset Responses ...	3-5
Text Entry	3-6
Entering Characters.....	3-8
Editing Characters	3-11
User Dictionary	3-12
Saving Frequently Used Words (Japanese).....	3-12

Dictionary	3-13
Using Dictionaries (Japanese)	3-13
Search.....	3-16
Searching Text.....	3-16
Scratch Pad	3-17
Phone Book.....	3-18
Creating Phone Book Entries	3-18
Using Phone Book Entries	3-20
Additional Functions	3-21
Troubleshooting.....	3-26

3

Universal Operations, Etc.

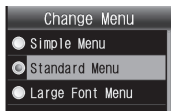


Customizing Fonts

Enlarging All Fonts

Follow these steps to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc.:

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ In **Sound/Display menu**, **Change Menu** ➔ 



- 2 **Large Font Menu** ➔ 

Canceling Large Font Menu

In 2, **Standard Menu** ➔ 

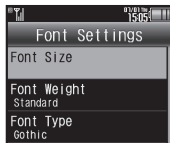
Resizing Specific Fonts

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ 






- 2 In **Sound/Display menu**, **Display** ➔ 

- 3 **Font Settings** ➔ 

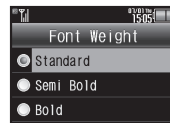


Font Settings Menu

- 4 **Font Size** ➔  ➔ **Select item** ➔ 
- 5 **Select size** ➔ 

Changing Font Weight

- 1 In **Font Settings menu**, **Font Weight** ➔ 



- 2 **Select weight** ➔ 

Using Mincho Font

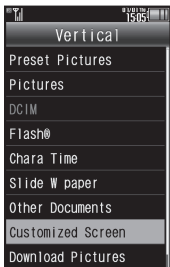
- 1 In **Font Settings menu**, **Font Type** ➔ 

- 2 **Ming-cho** ➔ 



Wallpaper

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In **Sound/Display menu**, **Display** ➔
- 2 **Wallpaper** ➔
- 3 **Vertical or Horizontal** ➔



Wallpaper Menu

- 4 **Select folder** ➔
- 5 **Select file** ➔
 - Some files may not be usable.
 - Omit the next step when **Preset Pictures** is selected in 4.
- 6

Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display

After 5, select option ➔ ➔

- For **Centered**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

Downloading Images via Yahoo! Keitai

In 4, **Download Pictures** ➔

- Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:
Yes ➔ ➔

If Double Number Mode Menu Opens

Select mode ➔

Selecting Chara Time Files

In 4, **Chara Time** ➔ ➔ **Select file**
➔ ➔ ➔

Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby. Some images may not appear.

- 1 In Wallpaper menu, **Slide W paper** ➔
- 2 **Folder Setting** ➔
- 3 **Pictures or DCIM** ➔
- 4 **Select sub folder** ➔ ➔ **Set this folder** ➔
 - Omit steps for sub folder if none is applicable.

If There is No Image in Set Folder

- Preset images appear.

Using Preset Images

In 3, **Preset Pictures** ➔

Changing Pattern






In 2, **Pattern Setting** ➔ ➔ **Select pattern** ➔

- To check patterns, select one and press .




Customized Screen (Japanese)

Preset Customized Screens

- 1  → 
- 2 **Preset Screens** → 
- 3 **Select pattern** → 
- 4  → 

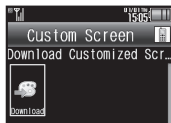
When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after ③.
To cancel, choose **Yes** and press .

Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

- 1  → **Data Folder** →  → **Customized Screen** → 




Customized Screen Menu

- 2 **Download Customized Screen** → 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup

- 1 **In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen** → 

- 2  → 






Applying Fee-Based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:

After ①,  → **Yes** → 

- Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

Advanced

-   Canceling Customized Screen  Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally  Deleting Customized Screens  Accessing Customized Screen source sites (P.3-21)



Customizing Handset Responses

Ringtone

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In **Sound/Display** menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔



Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2 **Ringtone/videos** ➔
- 3 **Select item** ➔
 - For **For New Message**, etc., select **Assign Tone** and press .
- 4 **Select folder** ➔
- 5 **Select tone/file** ➔

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.

After , **Duration** ➔ ➔ Enter time ➔

Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions

In , **Videos** ➔ ➔ Select file ➔

If Portion of File Content is Specifiable

• After , start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:

Select start point ➔

Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period

• A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

Machi-Uta® Service Registration (Japanese)

Use Machi-Uta® to play music instead of the standard ringback tone for the other party.

Machi-Uta® requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts** menu, **Machi-Uta** ➔
- 2 **Register/Cancel** ➔
 - Follow onscreen instructions.

Vibration

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts** menu, **Vibration** ➔
- 2 **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 3 **On** ➔
- 4 **Vibration Pattern** ➔
 - To check vibration patterns, select one and press .
- 5 **Select pattern** ➔

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration

In , **Link to Sound** ➔

Important Vibration Usage Note

• Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

Advanced

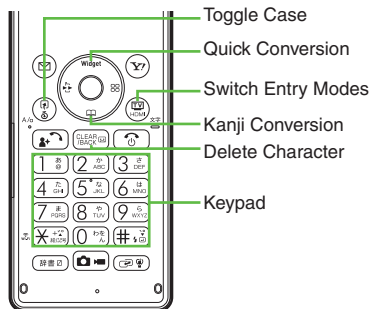
Using Machi-Uta® (Japanese) (P.3-21)



Text Entry

Use handset keys or Touch Panel to enter text.

Handset Keys



Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows using handset keys.

Opening Help

☰ ➔ Help ➔ ☉

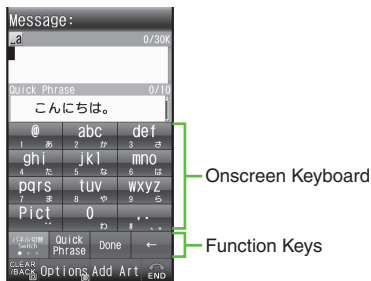
Note

- Pressing ☉ repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

Touch Panel

Use Onscreen Keyboard to enter text.

- Onscreen Keyboard keys correspond to Keypad keys.
- Onscreen Keyboard appears when a text entry window is opened in Viewer position.



Tap **Switch**



- Tap **Switch** at the bottom to toggle Function Key assignments.

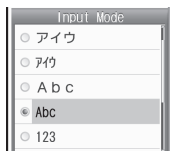
Function Key Assignments

Input Mode	Switch entry modes
A/a	Toggle case
Conv	Convert hiragana to kanji, etc.
Conf.	Enter current characters
Rev. Order	Reverse character options
Undo	Undo conversion/deletion
Quick Phrase	Use Quick Phrase
Auto Art	Convert to Graphic Mail
Correction	Initiate Correction Conversion
Emoticons	Open emoticon list
Search Word	Enter text from dictionaries
Prev. (Next)	Open previous (next) page
Common Pict	Show Cross-Carrier Pictograms
All Pict	Show all Pictograms
Quick Conv	Initiate Quick Conversion
Pred. Mode	Toggle suggestion mode
←/→	Move cursor left/right
Range Text	Highlight text range
Quit	Cancel Range Text
Copy (Cut)	Copy (cut) highlighted text
Del. All	Delete all characters
Dict.	Use dictionaries
Done	End text entry
Keyboard Off	Hide Keyboard
Keyboard On	Show Keyboard



Switching Entry Modes

1



- Available entry modes appear.

2 Select mode ➡ ●

- Entry Mode Indicators:

	Kanji (Hiragana)
	Double/Single-byte Katakana
	Double-byte Alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte Alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte Number
	Character Code

* appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle character options for that key.

Example: In Double-byte Katakana mode, press three times.



- Press to toggle options in reverse. To type characters assigned to the same key, press first.

Example: In Single-byte Alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.



- Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.



Advanced

- Using Character Codes
- Using Pager Code (P.3-21)



Entering Characters

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter **すずき** in Kanji (Hiragana) mode:

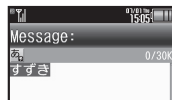


2 (Confirm)

Kanji

Convert **すずき** to **鈴木**.

1 Type すずき



- In Kanji (Hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana are typed. (Predictive)
- Long Press (⌘) to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male, Female and Automatic. (Personal Mode)

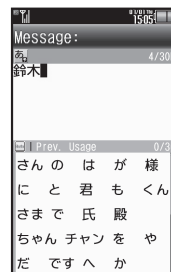
2



3 鈴木

- To exit suggestion list, press (⌘).

4



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press (⌘) or (⇧) to segment hiragana to convert separately.
 - Press (⇧) to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

Single Kanji Conversion

Type reading in hiragana → (⇧) (Long)

Advanced

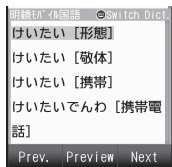
- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Clearing entry log
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words
- Lowering type priorities in suggestion list
- Selecting a suggestion mode (P.3-21 - 3-22)



Entering from Dictionaries (Search Word)

Enter text by referring to word definitions, translations, etc.

1 Type hiragana ➔ Before completing entry,



- Press  to toggle dictionaries.

2 Select word, etc. ➔

- Definition/translation appears.

3

One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **サズ**き was previously converted to **鈴木**.

1 3 3 3 (ず) ➔

2 Select word/phrase ➔

Correction Conversion

After mistyping hiragana assigned to the same key (e.g., **い** instead of **う**), follow these steps to enter intended word/phrase from suggestion list without retyping: (Available when three or more hiragana are typed.)

1 Type hiragana ➔ Before selecting word/phrase, (Long)

- Corrected word suggestions appear.

2 Select word/phrase ➔

Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to Double-byte Katakana mode and enter **ジュン**.

1 ➔ アイウ ➔

2 3 3 (シ) ➔ (ジ) ➔ 8 8 (コ) ➔ (コ) ➔ 0 0 0 (ン) ➔



Pictograms & Symbols



May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1

- Pictogram or Symbol List appears. (Log appears if Pictogram/Symbol has been used.)

2 (toggle tabs) ➔ or (toggle Lists)



- While entering message text, press  in Pictogram List to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms. Alternatively, press  to switch to My Pictogram or Symbol List.

3 Select Pictogram or Symbol ➔

- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte entry modes.

4 ➔ List closes



Emoticons

1 [Envelope] ➔ **Emoticons** ➔ [Globe]

2 **Select emoticon** ➔ [Globe]

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

- In Kanji (Hiragana) mode, type **かお** or a descriptive word such as **わーい** or **うーん**, then convert the entry.

EmoticonWordLink

- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

1 [Envelope] ➔ **Quick Addr. List** ➔ [Globe]

2 **Select extension** ➔ [Globe]

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

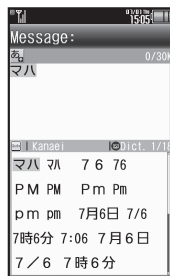
Hiragana to Katakana/
Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in Kanji (Hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**

Use key inscriptions.

1 [7] [P] [M] ➔ [PM]



2 **Select word/phrase (PM)** ➔ [Globe]

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter **終電**

1 [3] [シ] [マ] ➔ [8] [ヤ] ➔ [1] [ア] ➔ [4] [タ] ➔ [0] [カ] ➔ [Globe]



2 **Select word/phrase (終電)** ➔ [Globe]

One Hiragana Word Call

- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press [Globe].



Editing Characters

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願いします** to **また明日お願いします**:

1 Select character



2



- The highlighted character is deleted.

3 Select target location ➔ Enter characters



Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press to recover characters deleted with .

Deleting All Text

- Long Press at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press .

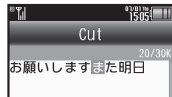
Jumping to the End or Top of Text

- ➔ ➔ *Cursor Position* ➔ ➔ *Jump to End or Jump to Top* ➔

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 ➔ *Cut or Copy* ➔ ➔

Select first character ➔



Cut

- To cancel and start over, press .

2 Highlight text range ➔

3 Select target location ➔ (Long)



- Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

Select target location ➔ ➔ *Paste*

➔ ➔ Select text ➔

- Available when Paste List appears.

Advanced

- Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
- Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.3-21)

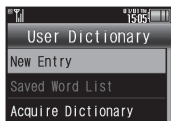


Saving Frequently Used Words (Japanese)

Saving Words

Saved words appear among suggestions.

- 1 **Settings** → **Phone/** → **User Dictionary**



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** → **Enter word**
- 3 **Enter reading**

Editing Entries

- In 2, **Saved Word List** → **Select word** → **Edit** → **Edit reading** → **Yes**

945SH Download Dictionary

Get specialized 945SH Download Dictionaries via SH-web Mobile Internet site (シャープメーカーのSH-web in Bookmarks; see P.6-9).

Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.

Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In **User Dictionary menu**, **Acquire Dictionary**
- 2 **Select number** → **Select file**
 - Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary

- In 2, select dictionary → **Cancel**

Viewing Dictionary Information

- In 2, select dictionary → **Info**

Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words (katakana or alphanumerics) in suggestion list.
- Effective in Kanji (Hiragana) mode.

Advanced

- ☞ Deleting entries (P.3-22)



Using Dictionaries (Japanese)

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries*	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries	Yahoo! Answers, Meikyo Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary MX.net, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Complete Japanese Encyclopedia (Encyclopedia Nipponica 2001) including "Nipponica Plus," Digital Dai-ji-sen Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive English-Japanese Dictionary, Shogakukan Progressive Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper FooMoo, Amazon.co.jp, Family Medical Encyclopedia, Guide to Prescription Drugs

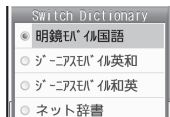
*Download and add dictionaries as needed.

Online Dictionaries

- Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
- Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

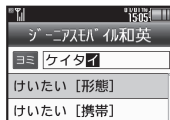
Using Preloaded Dictionaries

Searching As-You-Type



Dictionary Window

- Last used dictionary appears first.



- Enter reading in katakana.
- Search results appear as you type.



Definition/Translation Window

Looking Up in Online Dictionaries

[Definition/Translation Window]

➡ **WebDict.Search** ➡

- Perform from ② (except ④) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on P.3-14. (Read bulleted sentence in ① beforehand.)

Searching by Keyword



- Definition/translation window opens.

Advanced

- 👉 ● Changing Font Size ● Looking up copied words in dictionaries ● Viewing dictionary information ● Updating dictionary list (And more on P.3-22)



Copying Text

Selected Portions

1 In definition/translation window, ●

2 Select first character ➡ ●
➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●

Index Word Only

1 In definition/translation window, ☒

2 Copy Index Word ➡ ●

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1 In Dictionary window, ☒

2 Add Dictionary ➡ ●

3 Select file ➡ ●

Canceling Added Dictionary

In ☒, Cancel Dictionary ➡ ● ➡ Yes
➡ ●

Using Online Dictionaries

1 辞書の ➡ ㄣ ➡ ネット辞書
➡ ●

- Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time; read and then press ●. Subsequently, image download options appear; select one and press ●.

2 Select pull-down menu ➡ ●



3 Select dictionary ➡ ●

- Select すべて to look up in all dictionaries at once.

4 Select entry field ➡ ● ➡
Enter text ➡ ●

5 Search ➡ ●

6 Yes ➡ ●

7 Select word, etc. ➡ ●
• Definition/translation window opens.

Disabling Confirmation

After ☒, ☒ (☑) ➡ From ☒

Viewing Dictionary Information

After ☒, select word, etc. ➡ ☒ ➡

Reference ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●

Looking Up in Preloaded Dictionaries

After ☒, ☒ ➡ Find by Other Dict. ➡

● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ● ➡

Search ➡ ● ➡ Select word, etc.

➡ ●

Opening Terms of Service

After 1, ☒ ➡ Terms of service ➡ ●

- Press ● to return to Dictionary window.

Advanced

- ☞ ● Selecting dictionaries for use ● Selecting search method ● Selecting search area (And more on P.3-22 - 3-23)



Using History & Bookmarks

Saving Bookmarks

1 In definition/translation window, 

2 **Bookmark** ➡ 

Opening History or Bookmarks

1 In Dictionary window, 

2 **History List** or **Bookmark List** ➡ 

3 **Select word, etc.** ➡ 

- Definition/translation window opens.
- Not available in History List of online dictionaries.

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

1 **Type text** ➡ **Before completing entry**, 

2 **Select dictionary** ➡ 

3 **Search** ➡  ➡ **Select word, etc.** ➡ 

- Definition/translation window opens.

Inserting Index Word into Text

After  ➡ **Paste Index Word** ➡ 

Advanced

-   Deleting history records or bookmarks (P.3-22)



Searching Text

Web Search

Packet transmission fees apply.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.**

2 **Search** ➔



Search Window

- **Web Search** is selected by default.

3 **Select entry field** ➔ ➔ **Enter search text** ➔

4 **Search** ➔

- Search results appear.

Switching Browsers

[Search Window] ➔ **Change Browser** ➔ ➔ **Select browser** ➔

Mail Search

1 **In Search window, Mail Search** ➔

2 **Select entry field** ➔ ➔ **Enter search text** ➔

3 **Search** ➔

4 **Select option** ➔

Searching within Received or Sent Messages

[Search Window] ➔ **Change Mail Folder** ➔ ➔ **Received Messages or Sent Messages** ➔



Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.**

2 **Scratch Pad** ➔
 • Text entry window opens.

3 **Enter text** ➔



4 **Save to Notepad** ➔
 • Open saved entries from Notepad.

Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation in 4
Paste to Standby or Icon View	Set as StbyShortcut ➔ ➔ Select target location ➔
Enter Mail Message Text	Create Message ➔ ➔ Select mail type ➔
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	Save to Calendar ➔
Enter Task Subject/Details	Save to Tasks ➔
Add Last Name/ Phone Number/ Mail Address to Phone Book	Save to Phone Book ➔ ■ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	Save as Text File ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ ■ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	Web Search ➔ ➔ ➔ Select browser ➔

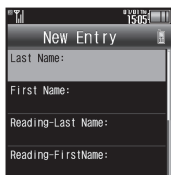
For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.



Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1 ➔ **Phone** ➔ ➔ **Add New Entry** ➔

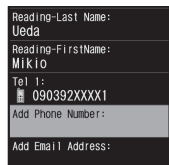


2 **Last Name:** ➔ ➔ **Enter last name** ➔ ➔ **First Name:** ➔ ➔ **Enter first name** ➔



- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3 **Add Phone Number:** ➔ ➔ **Enter phone number** ➔ ➔ **Select type** ➔



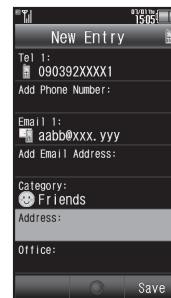
- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

4 **Add Email Address:** ➔ ➔ **Enter mail address** ➔ ➔ **Select type** ➔



- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

5 **Category:** ➔ ➔ **Select Category** ➔



Phone Book Entry Window

6 ➔ **Entry is saved to Phone Book.**

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Selecting Mode in Dual Mode

[Phone Book Entry Window] Mode:

➔ ➔ **Select mode** ➔ ➔ **6**

Advanced

- Saving other information
- Changing illumination settings
- Changing vibration pattern
- Editing Phone Book entries
- Setting incoming mail ring time
- Renaming Categories
- Changing Category icons
- Changing Category order
- Changing modes of all entries at once (And more on **P.3-23 - 3-25**)

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call*: ➔ ●
- 2 *Assign Tone* ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ●
- 3 Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ

Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, *Secret*: ➔ ●
- 2 *On* ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ

Accessing Secret Entries

- ➔ ☎ ➔ *Unlock Temporarily* ➔
- ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

Customizing Response by Category

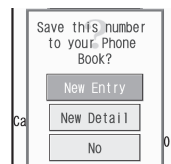
- 1 ● ➔ *Phone* ➔ ● ➔ *Set Category* ➔ ●
- 2 Select Category ➔ ☎ ➔ Select item ➔ ●
- 3 Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select item, e.g., *Assign Tone* ➔ ● ➔ *Customize responses*
 - Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
 - Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

- Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



- 1 When confirmation appears, *New Entry* ➔ ● ➔ *Complete other fields* ➔ Ⓜ

Saving to an Existing Entry

- In 1, *New Detail* ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ *Complete other fields* ➔ Ⓜ



Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

- 1 ➔ Select katakana row



Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, line indicators appear.

- 2 Select entry ➔
- 3 Select phone number
- 4

Placing Video Calls

After ➔ ➔ ➔

Changing Search Method

- 1 In entry search window, ➔ *Ph.Book Settings* ➔
- 2 Sort Entries ➔
- 3 Select method ➔

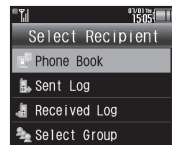
• Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] (press to toggle search methods)

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

- 1 *Phone Book* ➔
- 2 Select entry ➔
- 3 Select phone number or mail address ➔

- Recipient is entered.
- Omit if only one number or address is saved.

Advanced

- Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions
- Changing view for entry search window
- Messaging via Phone Book
- Deleting Phone Book entries
- Checking memory status
- Copying Phone Book entries (And more on P.3-23 - 3-25)



Customized Screen

Canceling Customized Screen	→ → Off → → Yes →
Canceling Customized Screen unconditionally	→ Menu List → → Settings → → In Sound/Display menu, Customized Screen → → Off → → Yes →
Deleting Customized Screens	→ Data Folder → → Customized Screen → → Select Customized Screen → → Delete → → Yes → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the corresponding Contents Key has been downloaded, choose Yes or No and press .
Accessing Customized Screen source sites	→ Data Folder → → Customized Screen → → Select Customized Screen → → Web Access → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.

Machi-Uta®

Using Machi-Uta® (Japanese)	Start Here → Settings → → In Sound/Display menu, Sounds & Alerts → → Machi-Uta → → See below
	Searching Music Music Search → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
	Changing Settings Settings → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
	Viewing Machi-Uta® Information What's Machi-Uta →

Text Entry

Entry & Edit

Using Character Codes	In a text entry window, → Character Code → → Enter four digits
Using Pager Code	In a text entry window, → → Input Method → → Pager Code → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Return to text entry window and enter two digits.
Inserting line breaks	At the End of Text In a text entry window,
	Mid-Entry In a text entry window, → (select Symbols) → (or) →
Inserting spaces	In a text entry window,
Clearing entry log	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Reset Log → → Yes →
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	In a text entry window, → Undo/Recover →
Inserting Phone Book entry items	In a text entry window, → Insert/Font Size → → Phone Book → → Select entry → → Select item →
Changing Font Size	In a text entry window, → Insert/Font Size → → Font Size → → Select size →



■ Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Predictive → → Off →
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Previous Usage → → Off →
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → EmoticonWordLink → → Off →
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Set Low Priority → → →
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window, → Input/Conversion → → Personal Mode → →

User Dictionary

Deleting entries	→ Settings → → Phone/Email → User Dictionary → → Saved Word List → → →
------------------	--

Dictionary

■ Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	→ → Font Size → → Select size →
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text, → → Search by Copied Text → → Search → →

Deleting history records or bookmarks

→ → → **See below**

One Word

Select word → → **Delete** → → **Yes** →

All Words

→ **Delete All** → → **Yes** →

Looking up scanned kanji in dictionaries

→ → **Kanji/Eng. Grabber** → → **Select word, etc.** →

• Definition/translation window opens.

Looking up scanned text in dictionaries

→ → **Scan Text** → → **Frame text in center of Display** → → **Select line** → → **Search** → → **Select word, etc.** →

• Definition/translation window opens.

■ Preloaded Dictionaries

Viewing dictionary information

→ → **Information** →

■ Online Dictionaries

Updating dictionary list

→ → **ネット辞書** → → **Update Dictionaries** → → **Yes** →

Selecting dictionaries for use

→ → **ネット辞書** → → **Edit Dict. List** → → →

Selecting image download option

→ → **ネット辞書** → → **Show Image** → → **Select option** →

• For **Auto**, choose **Yes** and press .



Selecting search method	<p>辞書 (辞書) ➡ (Y) ➡ ネット辞書 ➡ (●) ➡ Select pull-down menu ➡ (●) ➡ Select dictionary ➡ (●) ➡ (辞書) ➡ Set Search Method ➡ (●) ➡ Select option ➡ (●)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not available when すべて or unsupported dictionary is selected.
Selecting search area	<p>辞書 (辞書) ➡ (Y) ➡ ネット辞書 ➡ (●) ➡ Select pull-down menu ➡ (●) ➡ Select dictionary ➡ (●) ➡ (辞書) ➡ Set Search Area ➡ (●) ➡ Select area ➡ (●)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not available when すべて or unsupported dictionary is selected.
Opening Help	<p>辞書 (辞書) ➡ (Y) ➡ ネット辞書 ➡ (●) ➡ Select pull-down menu ➡ (●) ➡ Select dictionary ➡ (●) ➡ (辞書) ➡ Help ➡ (●) ➡ Yes ➡ (●)</p>

Phone Book

■ View Settings

Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	<p>Start Here (●) ➡ Phone ➡ (●) ➡ Add New Entry ➡ (●) ➡ Picture: ➡ (●) ➡ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To save entry, at least a name, phone number or mail address must be entered.
	<p>Assigning Images</p> <p>Select folder ➡ (●) ➡ Select image ➡ (●) ➡ (●) ➡ (Y)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To specify image area or zoom in/out, press (辞書) while image appears. Edit window may open depending on selected image size. To proceed, specify image area or zoom in/out and press (●).
	<p>Capturing Images</p> <p>Take a Photo ➡ (●) ➡ Frame image on Display ➡ (●) ➡ (●) ➡ (Y)</p>

Changing view for entry search window	<p>(●) ➡ Phone ➡ (●) ➡ Settings/Manage ➡ (●) ➡ Ph.Book Settings ➡ (●) ➡ Vertical Display or Horizontal Display ➡ (●) ➡ Select option ➡ (●)</p>
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	<p>(●) ➡ Phone ➡ (●) ➡ Settings/Manage ➡ (●) ➡ Ph.Book Settings ➡ (●) ➡ New Number Prompt ➡ (●) ➡ Incoming Call or Outgoing Call ➡ (●) ➡ Off ➡ (●)</p>

■ Phone Book Entry

Press (Y) at the end to save entry. (At least a name, phone number or mail address must be entered.)

Saving other information	<p>Start Here (●) ➡ Phone ➡ (●) ➡ Add New Entry ➡ (●) ➡ See below</p>
	<p>Address</p> <p>Address: ➡ (●) ➡ Select item ➡ (●) ➡ Complete field ➡ (●) ➡ (Y)</p>
	<p>Office</p> <p>Office: ➡ (●) ➡ Select item ➡ (●) ➡ Enter text ➡ (●) ➡ (Y)</p>
	<p>Homepage</p> <p>Homepage: ➡ (●) ➡ Enter URL ➡ (●) ➡ Select type ➡ (●)</p>
	<p>Note</p> <p>Note: ➡ (●) ➡ Enter text ➡ (●)</p>
	<p>Birthday</p> <p>Birthday: ➡ (●) ➡ Enter date ➡ (●)</p>
	<p>Location Information</p> <p>Location Info.: ➡ (●) ➡ Select option ➡ (●)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subsequent operation varies by option; complete setting accordingly.



Changing illumination settings	<p>Start Here → Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Illumi.-Voice Call</i>: → See below</p> <p>Enabling Illumination Switch On/Off → On or Link to Sound →</p> <p>Changing Illumination Pattern Pattern/Color → Select pattern → Select color → • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.</p> <p>Changing Key Illumination Pattern Key Pattern → Select pattern → • Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to <i>Link to Sound</i>.</p>
	<p>→ Phone → Add New Entry → Select item, e.g., <i>Vibration-Message</i>: → Switch On/Off → Select option → Vibration Pattern → Select pattern →</p>
	Changing vibration pattern

■ Editing Entries & Categories

Editing Phone Book entries	<p>→ Select entry → Edit → Select item → Edit →</p> <p>• Edit Reading after editing names.</p>
Setting incoming mail ring time	<p>→ Select entry → Edit → Tone-New Message: → Duration → Enter time →</p> <p>• Available for compatible ringtones.</p>

Renaming Categories	<p>→ Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Edit Name → Enter name →</p>
Changing Category icons	<p>→ Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Change Icon → Select Pictogram →</p>
Changing Category order	<p>→ Phone → Set Category → Select Category → Select target location →</p> <p>• View for <i>By Category</i> Phone Book search changes accordingly.</p>

■ Using Entries

Messaging via Phone Book	<p>Start Here → Select entry → See below</p> <p>Phone Numbers Select phone number → Create Message → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message →</p> <p>Mail Addresses Select mail address → Complete message →</p>
	<p>→ Select entry → Select phone number → Call S! Circle Talk → Set Connection status to <i>Online</i> first.</p>
	<p>→ Select entry → Select phone number → Int'l Call → Select country →</p>
Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book	
Placing international calls via Phone Book	
Using Location Information via Phone Book	<p>→ Select entry → Settings → Set to Destination →</p> <p>• Follow onscreen instructions.</p>



■ Managing Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	One Entry Ⓜ ➞ Select entry ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Delete ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Yes ➞ Ⓜ
	All Entries Ⓜ ➞ Phone ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Settings/Manage ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Delete All ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select entry type ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Yes ➞ Ⓜ
Checking memory status	Ⓜ ➞ Phone ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Settings/Manage ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Memory Status ➞ Ⓜ
Copying Phone Book entries	One Entry (Handset → USIM Card) Ⓜ ➞ Select entry ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Copy Entry to USIM ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Yes ➞ Ⓜ
	One Entry (USIM Card → Handset) Ⓜ ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Ph.Book Settings ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select Phone Book ➞ Ⓜ ➞ USIM Memory ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select entry ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Copy Entry to Phone ➞ Ⓜ
	All Entries Ⓜ ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Copy All ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select method ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Yes ➞ Ⓜ • If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.

Editing Categories on USIM Card	Start Here Ⓜ ➞ Phone ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Set Category ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Change to USIM ➞ Ⓜ ➞ See below
	Renaming Categories Select Category ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Edit Name ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Enter name ➞ Ⓜ
	Changing Order Select Category ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select target location ➞ Ⓜ
	Changing Icons Select Category ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Change Icon ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select Pictogram ➞ Ⓜ
Changing default storage media for new entries	Ⓜ ➞ Phone ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Settings/Manage ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Ph.Book Settings ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Save New Entry ➞ Ⓜ ➞ USIM Memory or Ask Each Time ➞ Ⓜ
Switching reference Phone Book	Ⓜ ➞ Phone ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Settings/Manage ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Ph.Book Settings ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select Phone Book ➞ Ⓜ ➞ USIM Memory or Both ➞ Ⓜ

■ Mode (Double Number)

First, activate Double Number.

Changing modes of all entries at once	Ⓜ ➞ Phone ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Settings/Manage ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Change Mode(All) ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select mode ➞ Ⓜ
Changing modes of multiple entries	Ⓜ ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Multiple Selection ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select entry ➞ Ⓜ (☐/☑) ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Change Mode ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select mode ➞ Ⓜ
Changing modes of entries by Category	Ⓜ ➞ Select Category ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Manage Entries ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Change Mode(Category) ➞ Ⓜ ➞ Select mode ➞ Ⓜ • Set search method to <i>By Category</i> first.



Customized Screen

? Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

Phone Book

? Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., be sure that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

? Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., be sure that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

? Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



Emergency Calls	4-2
Voice Calling	4-3
Video Calling	4-5
Speed Dial & Rakutomo Link	4-6
Placing Calls Easily	4-6
Call Log	4-8
Call Time	4-9

Call Barring	4-10
Restrict Destinations	4-10
Reject Numbers	4-11
Optional Services	4-12
Additional Functions	4-14
Troubleshooting	4-21

4

Calling



Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)
945SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Bar Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	



Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window

- 1** **to accept the call**
 - Call connects.
 - Answer calls with clamshell open.

- 2** **Call ends**

Muting Ringer Temporarily
 When a call arrives,
Earpiece Volume
 During a call, or

After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears. Select **New Entry** or **New Detail** and press to save number; Phone Book entry window or entry search window opens, respectively.

Placing a Voice Call

- 1** **Enter phone number with area code**
 - To correct entry, use to place cursor under the digit and press . To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press .

- 2**
 - Wait for receiver to accept the call.



- 3** **Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After **1**, **Select Line(Voice)**
Select line

Placing an International Call

- 1** **Enter phone number with area code**
- 2** **Int'l Call**
- 3** **Select country**
 - Handset dials the number.
- 4** **Call ends**

Calling Unlisted Countries

In , **Enter Code** **Enter country code**

4

Calling

Advanced

- Rejecting calls Placing calls on hold Answering with Headphones Adjusting Earpiece Volume Sending/blocking Caller ID Muting Microphone
- Recording caller voice (And more on **P.4-14 - 4-16**)
- Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (And more on **P.4-19**)



Placing Calls from Outside Japan

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand. See SoftBank Mobile Website for details: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/ Access roaming area/rate information or print it out to carry with you while traveling abroad.

1 Enter phone number with area code ➡ ➡ **Int'l Call** ➡

2 日本(JPN) ➡ ➡

- Handset dials the number.
- To call other countries, select the target country instead of **日本(JPN)**.

3 ➡ **Call ends**

Calling SoftBank Handsets

- In **2**, always select **日本(JPN)**.

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

Enter phone number with area code

➡ ➡ **Dial to Your Stay** ➡

Calls Overseas

- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used while handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1 **(Long)**
• Answer Phone is set.

Canceling Answer Phone

(Long)

Answering Calls while Recording

- Press . (No message will be recorded.)

Playing Messages

1

2 Select record ➡

- Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

Deleting All Records

After **1**, ➡ **Delete All** ➡ ➡ **Yes** ➡

Playback Operations

Volume Control	or
Replay/Skip Backward	
Stop	
Skip Forward	
Delete	➡ Yes ➡
Loudspeaker On/Off	

Advanced

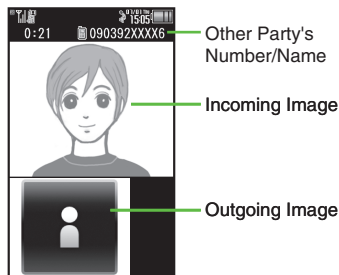
- Recording messages when Answer Phone is inactive
- Changing ring time
- Sampling outgoing message
- Muting Earpiece (P.4-14)
- Placing calls by entering country code directly
- Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan (And more on P.4-15)



Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

Window Description



Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Advanced

- Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on P.4-14)
- Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness ● Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls ● Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ● Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on P.4-16 - 4-20)

Answering a Video Call

Incoming call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 to accept the call
 - Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)
- 2 ➔ Call ends

Answering with Camera Image

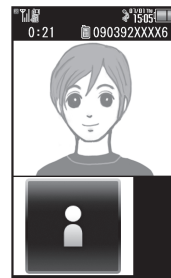
[Incoming Video Call Window] ● ➔
No ➔ ●

Engaged Video Call Operations

Toggle View	
Toggle Outgoing Image	
Open Help	➔ Help ➔ ●

Placing a Video Call

- 1 Enter phone number ➔ ●
- 2 Video Call ➔ ●



- Image appears when call is accepted.

- 3 ➔ Call ends

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After 1, Select Line(Video) ➔ ● ➔
Select line ➔ ●



Placing Calls Easily

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list or Rakutomo Link for easy dialing.

Using Speed Dial

Saving Entries

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail** ➔
- 3 **<Empty>** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔

4 Select phone number ➔



- Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press . (Omit .)

5 Do not Assign ➔

6 ➔ **Saved**

- To save additional entries, repeat 3 - 6.

Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to .

Removing Speed Dial Entries

In 3, select entry ➔ ➔ **Remove Selected or Remove All** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

- Omit entry selection step when removing all entries.

Placing a Call

1 - (entry number)

2

Placing Video Calls

In 2, ➔ **Speed Video** ➔

Using Headphones

- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in . To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.



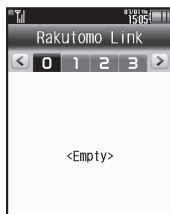
Using Rakutomo Link

Saving Entries

Follow these steps to save entries from Phone Book:

(Entries saved to Rakutomo Link are saved to Speed Dial list as well.)

1



2 Select blank entry (<Empty> appears)

3 Refer Phone Book Select entry

- To select a different saved number, press , select one and press .

4 Saved

- To save additional entries, repeat 2 - 4.

Saving Entries Directly

In 2, *Direct Entry* Complete fields 4

Saving Note

After 4, <Note Empty> Enter text

Editing Entries (Phone Number)

Select entry Change Registered Contents Change the Use Address Call number: Select new phone number 4

Placing a Call

1



2 Select entry Call

Placing Video Calls

In 2, (select entry) Video Call

Deleting Note

Select entry Delete the Note Yes

Removing Rakutomo Link Entries

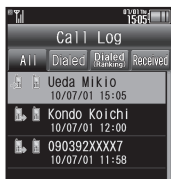
Select entry Remove Yes



Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1



- All records appear; press to open Dialed, Dialed Ranking and then Received records.

2 Select record ➡

When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk.)

Hiding Dialed Ranking

In , *Dialed or Dialed (Ranking)*

➡ ➡ *Hide Dialed Ranking* ➡

- To show Dialed Ranking again, follow these steps:

In , *Dialed* ➡ ➡ *Show Dialed Ranking* ➡



Advanced

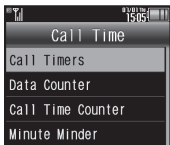
- Dialing from records (And more on P.4-16 - 4-17)

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Call**

2 **Call Time/Data Counter** ➔



3 **Call Timers** ➔

4 **Dialed Calls or Received Calls** ➔

Resetting Dialed or Received Call Timer

After 4, ➔ **Yes** ➔

Call Time Count

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

Advanced























● Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls ● Checking accumulated data transmission volume ● Resetting Data Counter (And more on P.4-17)



Restrict Destinations

Allow calls to numbers saved in Phone Book or Call Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

- 1                            

Reject Numbers

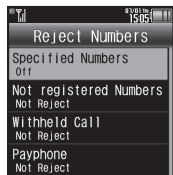
Reject calls from specified/unsaved numbers, calls without Caller ID, etc.

Rejecting Specified Numbers

Specifying Numbers

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Call** → **Call Barring** →

- 2 **Reject Numbers** →



Reject Numbers Menu

- 3 **Specified Numbers** →



Specified Numbers Menu

- 4 **Reject Numbers List** →

- 5 **<Empty>** →

- 6 **Enter phone number** →
 - Repeat - to add phone numbers.

Activating Rejection

- 1 In Specified Numbers menu, **Switch On/Off** →

- 2 **On** →

Rejecting Unsaved Numbers

- 1 In Reject Numbers menu, **Not registered Numbers** →

- 2 **Reject** →

Saved Numbers Containing P (Pause)

- Calls from the number before **P** are rejected.

Rejecting Other Calls

Reject calls without Caller ID, calls from public phones or calls with undisplayable Caller ID.

- 1 In Reject Numbers menu, **Withheld Call, Payphone or Unavailable** →

- 2 **Reject** →

Advanced

- Designating numbers to reject from saved information Editing Reject Numbers List Excluding rejected calls from Call Log (P.4-18)



Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touch tone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions

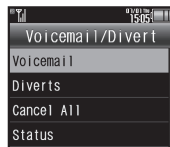
*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (**No Answer** set): (Numbers starting with **1, 00, 0120** or **0990** cannot be saved.)

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Call**

2 **Voicemail/Divert** ➔



Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts** ➔

4 **Select call type** ➔

5 **No Answer** ➔

6 **Phone Book** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔

7 **Select phone number** ➔

• Omit **7** if only one number is saved.

8

9 **Select ring time** ➔

Diverting Calls without Handset Response

In **5**, **Always** ➔ ➔ **5 - 5**

Entering Forwarding Number Directly

In **5**, **Enter Number** ➔ ➔ **Enter phone number** ➔ ➔ **Select ring time** ➔

Advanced

Checking service status (**P.4-18**)



Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** ➔ ● ➔ **Activate** ➔ ●
- 2 **No Answer** ➔ ● ➔ **Select ring time** ➔ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In **e, Always** ➔ ●

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- 1 ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Call**
 - 2 **out Missed Calls** ➔ ● ➔ ●
- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** ➔ ●
- 2 **Call Voicemail** ➔ ●
 - Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator
In **e, Delete Icon** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Cancel All** ➔ ●
- 2 **Yes** ➔ ●

Advanced

- Activating Call Waiting ● Talking on multiple lines simultaneously ● Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction ● Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on **P.4-18 - 4-19**)



Receiving a Call

Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	Voice Call When a call arrives, ➔ Reject ➔
	Video Call When a call arrives,
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, • Press to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, Long Press Call Button • To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

Answer Phone

Recording messages when Answer Phone is inactive	When a Voice Call arrives, ➔ Record Message ➔
Changing ring time	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Answer Phone ➔ ➔ Answer Time ➔ ➔ Enter time ➔
Sampling outgoing message	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Answer Phone ➔ ➔ Outgoing Message ➔ • Press to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Answer Phone ➔ ➔ Volume ➔ ➔ Silent ➔

Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Video Call ➔ ➔ Remote Monitor ➔ ➔ See below
	Saving Numbers from Phone Book Auto Answer List ➔ ➔ <Empty> ➔ ➔ Change ➔ ➔ From Phone Book ➔ ➔ Select entry ➔ ➔ Select phone number ➔ • To enter a phone number directly, select <Empty> and press .
	Saving Numbers from Call Log Auto Answer List ➔ ➔ <Empty> ➔ ➔ Change ➔ ➔ From Call Log ➔ ➔ Select record ➔
	Activating Remote Monitor Switch On/Off ➔ ➔ On ➔ ➔ ➔ • When Remote Monitor is active, auto answer tone sounds even in Manner mode; cancel afterward. • Calls cannot be answered automatically with clamshell closed.
Editing Auto Answer List	Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Video Call ➔ ➔ Remote Monitor ➔ ➔ Auto Answer List ➔ ➔ See below
Changing ring time	Editing Numbers Select entry ➔ ➔ Edit ➔
	Deleting Entries Select entry ➔ ➔ Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ ➔



Placing a Call

Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, Earpiece Volume ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, ☎ ➔ Hide My ID or Show My ID ➔ ●

International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	☎☎☎☎ (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter phone number with area code ➔ ☎☎☎☎ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries. • Pressing ☎☎☎☎ during a call does not enter +.
Using Roaming Dial Assistant to place international calls while outside Japan	Start Here Enter phone number with area code ➔ ☎☎☎☎ ➔ See below <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prompts do not appear for numbers with country codes. • To disable Roaming Dial Assistant automatically after a call, press ☎ to check box next to Don't use this tool again.. Calling Japan (Landlines & Mobiles) Dial to Japan ➔ ● ➔ ☎☎☎☎ Calling Other Countries (Landlines & Mobiles) Dial to Other Country ➔ ● ➔ Select country ➔ ● ➔ ☎☎☎☎
Disabling Roaming Dial Assistant	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ ☎☎ Call ➔ Int'l Calling ➔ ● ➔ Roaming Dial Assistant ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Off, handset dials the entered phone number as-is even while outside Japan.

Saving frequently used international prefix

● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ ☎☎ **Call** ➔ **Int'l Calling** ➔ ● ➔ **Int'l Prefix** ➔ ● ➔ Enter prefix ➔ ●

Adding/changing/deleting country codes

Start Here ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ ☎☎ **Call** ➔ **Int'l Calling** ➔ ● ➔ **Country Codes** ➔ ● ➔ See below

Adding

<Empty> ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● ➔ Enter country code ➔ ●

Changing

Select country ➔ ● ➔ **Change** ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● ➔ Enter country code ➔ ●

Deleting

Select country ➔ ● ➔ **Delete** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●
























During a Call

Voice Call & Video Call

Muting Microphone	Voice Call During a call, ☎ (press again to cancel) Video Call During a call, ☎ ➔ Mute ➔ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To cancel, select Unmute.
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call During a call, ● ➔ While message appears, ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To cancel, press ●. Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call During a call, ☎ (press again to activate)
Switching sound output	During a call, ☎ ➔ Transfer Audio ➔ ● ➔ To Phone or To Bluetooth ➔ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For To Bluetooth, select a device and press ●.





Recording caller voice	<p>During a call,  ➔ Record Caller Voice ➔ </p> <p>➔ Recording starts ➔  ➔ Recording ends</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To play recorded messages, see P.4-4 "Playing Messages."
Opening messages	<p>During a call,  ➔ Messaging ➔  ➔ Select Messaging folder ➔  ➔ Select folder ➔ </p> <p>➔ Select message ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press  three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	<p>During a call,  ➔ Messaging ➔  ➔ Create Message or Create New SMS ➔  ➔ </p> <p>Complete message ➔ </p>
Sending saved touch tones	<p>During a call,  ➔ Touch-Tone Signal List ➔  ➔ Select number ➔ </p>
Sending touch tones via Phone Book	<p>During a call,  ➔ Phone Book ➔  ➔ Select entry ➔  ➔ Send Push Tone ➔  ➔ </p> <p>Select phone number ➔ </p>

4-16

Call Log	
Dialing from records	→ Select record → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To place Video Calls, press instead of , then select Video Call and press .
Sending messages from records	→ Select record → → Create Message → → S! Mail or SMS → → Complete message →
Saving Phone Book entries from records	→ Select record → → Save to Phone Book → → As New Entry → → Complete other fields → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
Opening Phone Book entries from records	→ Select record → → Display Phone Book → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when selected record (phone number) is saved in Phone Book.
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	→ Select record → → Call S! Circle Talk → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set Connection status to Online first.
Deleting log records	One Record → Select record → → Delete (Delete Item in Dialed Ranking) → → Yes →
	All Records → → Delete All (Reset in Dialed Ranking) → → Yes →

Hiding Dialed Ranking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Phone Settings/Manage Call Log Setting Hide Dialed Ranking
-----------------------	---

Call Time & Data Communication

Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings Call Call Time/ Data Counter Minute Minder On
Hiding Call Time during calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings Call Call Time/ Data Counter Call Time Counter Off
Resetting Call Timers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings Call Call Time/ Data Counter Call Timers Reset Yes

Data Communication

Checking accumulated data transmission volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings Call Call Time/ Data Counter Data Counter All Data
Resetting Data Counter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings Call Call Time/ Data Counter Data Counter Clear Counter Yes

Restrict Destinations

Designating Call Permitted List numbers from saved information

Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Destinations → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Call Permitted List → <Empty> → See below

From Phone Book

Ph.Book List → Select entry → Select phone number

From Call Log Records

From Call Log → Select record

From S! Friend's Status Member List

From Friend's Status → Select member

Editing Call Permitted List

Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Destinations → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Call Permitted List → See below

Editing Numbers

Select number/name → Edit

Deleting Numbers

Select number/name → Delete → Yes



Reject Numbers

Designating numbers to reject from saved information	Start Here ● ➔ Settings ● ➔ Call ➔ Call Barring ● ➔ Reject Numbers ● ➔ Specified Numbers ● ➔ Reject Numbers List ● ➔ <Empty> ☒ ➔ See below
	From Phone Book Ph.Book List ● ➔ Select entry ● ➔ Select phone number ●
	From Call Log Records From Call Log ● ➔ Select record ●
Editing Reject Numbers List	From S! Friend's Status Member List From Friend's Status ● ➔ Select member ●
	Start Here ● ➔ Settings ● ➔ Call ➔ Call Barring ● ➔ Reject Numbers ● ➔ Specified Numbers ● ➔ Reject Numbers List ● ➔ See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name ● ➔ Edit ●
Excluding rejected calls from Call Log	Deleting Numbers Select number/name ☒ ➔ Delete ● ➔ Yes ●
	Settings ● ➔ Call ➔ Call Barring ● ➔ Reject Numbers ● ➔ Record on Call Log ● ➔ Do not Record ●

Optional Services

■ All Services

Checking service status	Settings ● ➔ Call ➔ Select service ● ➔ Status ● • Available for VoiceMail/Divert , Show My Number , Call Barring and Call Waiting . • For Call Barring , select restriction and press ●.
-------------------------	---

■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	Settings ● ➔ Call ➔ Call Waiting ● ➔ On ●
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	A tone sounds during a Voice Call ➔ ☒ • Press ☒ to switch between lines. • Press ☒ to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a call	During a Voice Call , enter phone number ➔ ☒ • Long Press ☒ to dial via Rakutomo Link.
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	During a Voice Call , ☒ • Press ☒ to switch between lines.
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	While switching between lines , ☒ ➔ Group Calling ● ➔ Conference All ●
Switching to private conversation	During Group Calling , select number/name ● ➔ Private ●



■ Call Barring

Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	<p>Start Here Settings Call Call Barring Bar Outgoing Calls </p> <p>See below</p> <p>Setting Restriction</p> <p>Select restriction On Enter Center Access Code </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted. Outgoing SI Circle Talk requests are not affected. Following restrictions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan
	<p>Canceling All Restrictions</p> <p>Cancel All Enter Center Access Code </p>
Setting/canceling incoming call restriction	<p>Start Here Settings Call Call Barring Bar Incoming Calls </p> <p>See below</p> <p>Setting Restriction</p> <p>Select restriction On Enter Center Access Code </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incoming SMS messages are also restricted. Incoming SI Circle Talk requests are not affected. Following restrictions are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan
	<p>Canceling All Restrictions</p> <p>Cancel All Enter Center Access Code </p>

■ Caller ID

Showing/hiding Caller ID	Settings Call Show My Number On or Off
--------------------------	--

Settings

■ Voice Call

Answering calls automatically when using Headphones	<p>Start Here Settings Call Auto Answer </p> <p>See below</p> <p>Activating Auto Answer</p> <p>Switch On/Off On </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.
	<p>Changing Ring Time</p> <p>Answer Time Enter time </p>
Saving frequently used touch tones	<p> Phone Touch-Tone Signal List Select number Enter name Enter digits </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Send saved tones from Voice Call window via Options menu.
Saving touch tones for White Office	<p> Phone Touch-Tone Signal List Change to White Office Tone </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Touch tones for White Office are saved to 11 - 5. When touch tones are already saved in 11 - 5, choose Yes and press .
Deleting touch tones	<p>Start Here Phone Touch-Tone Signal List </p> <p>See below</p> <p>One Entry</p> <p>Select number Delete Yes </p> <p>All Entries</p> <p> Reset Yes </p>



Video Call

Sending camera image when initiating Video Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Camera Picture</i> → ● → <i>Default Image</i> → ● → <i>External Camera</i> → ●
Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Loudspeaker</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ●
Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Mute Microphone</i> → ● → <i>On</i> → ●
Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Camera Picture</i> → ● → <i>Alternative Image</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ● → <i>Select file</i> → ● → ●
Changing Incoming/Outgoing Image quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture</i> → ● → <i>Select option</i> → ●
Setting image that is sent while call is on hold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Hold Guidance Pict</i> → ● → <i>Select folder</i> → ● → <i>Select file</i> → ● → ● • Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen image.
Setting Backlight status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → <i>Settings</i> → ● → <i>Call</i> → <i>Video Call</i> → ● → <i>Backlight</i> → ● → <i>Select option</i> → ● • Selecting Normal Setting applies Display Backlight settings.



Receiving a Call

? Cannot use Answer Phone or Record Caller Voice

- Answer Phone and Record Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds of recording capacity remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Record Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call

? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

? Cannot place call

- Cancel Keypad Lock, Function Lock and Offline Mode, if active.

? Call won't connect

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range (*out* appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

? Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

? Camera image switches to Alternative Image during Video Calls

- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.4-3).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (P.4-15) to *To Phone*.



Messaging	5-2
Basics	5-2
Customizing Handset Address	5-3
Sending Messages.....	5-4
Sending S! Mail	5-4
Sending Graphic Mail	5-7
Using Signature	5-10
Sending SMS.....	5-11
Restricting Outgoing Messages.....	5-12
Incoming Messages.....	5-13
Opening & Replying.....	5-13
Customizing S! Mail Retrieval.....	5-15

Handling Messages	5-16
Managing & Using Messages.....	5-16
Sorting Messages	5-18
Chat Folder.....	5-19
Using Chat Folders.....	5-19
Mail Groups	5-20
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail ...	5-20
PC Mail.....	5-21
Additional Functions	5-24
Troubleshooting.....	5-41

5

Messaging



Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach media files, etc.

Large Size Messages

Transmit messages of up to 2 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 945SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-24).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (P.5-37).



Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-24).

Changing Address

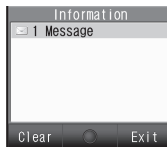
1 [Envelope] ➔ **Settings** ➔ [OK]

2 **Address Settings** ➔ [OK]

- Handset connects to the Internet. Select **English** and press [OK], then follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank Mobile sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



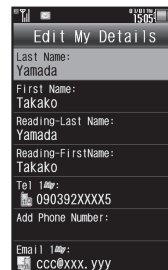
To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 **Message** ➔ [OK]



2 **Information** ➔ [OK]

3 **Yes** ➔ [OK]



4 [Y]



Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

- 1 ➔ **Create Message** ➔ When a PC Mail Account exists, select **S! Mail** and press .



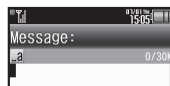
S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 **Select recipient field** ➔
- 3 **Phone Book** ➔
- 4 **Select entry** ➔
- 5 **Select number or mail address** ➔

- Omit if only one number or address is saved.
- When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

- 6 **Select subject field** ➔ ➔ **Enter subject** ➔

- 7 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

- 8 **Enter message** ➔



S! Mail Composition Window

- 9 ➔ **Transmission starts**
 - To cancel, press during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change by recipient type.

Previewing Outgoing Message

After , ➔ **Preview Message** ➔

Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press to toggle Cross-Carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[S! Mail Composition Window] ➔

Switch Line ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

Converting to Graphic Mail

After , **Auto Art** ➔ ➔ **Select decoration type** ➔ ➔ (Next) or (Prev.) ➔ ➔

- To cancel conversion, follow these steps before :

➔ **Cancel Arrangement** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on P.5-24 - 5-26)
- Hiding progress bar while sending messages
- Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on P.5-37 - 5-38)



Using Quick Phrase

Use fixed text (Japanese) or previously entered text for quick entry.

Quick Phrase Options:

Quick Phrase List	Shows Quick Reply text
Auto Registration	Shows initial portions of recently sent messages
Learning	Prioritizes recently used Quick Phrase text

1 Open text entry window and press

2 Select text \rightarrow \rightarrow

3 \rightarrow **Transmission starts**

Deleting Quick Phrase Text

In **2**, select text \rightarrow \rightarrow **Yes** \rightarrow

- Quick Reply text cannot be deleted.

Disabling Quick Phrase (Options)

[Text Entry Window] \rightarrow **Quick Phrase** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Select option** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Off** \rightarrow

Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field \rightarrow

2 **Picture** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Select folder** \rightarrow

3 **Select file** \rightarrow



File attached

4 \rightarrow **Transmission starts**

Attaching Non-Image Files

- In **2**, select a folder other than **Picture** and press , then select a file.

Attaching Multiple Files

After **3**, **Attach (1)** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Attach File** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Picture** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Select folder** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Select file** \rightarrow \rightarrow

- X** in **Attach (X)** indicates the number of attached files.

Auto Image Resize

Large images may be automatically reduced to approximately 400 - 500 KB by default. Change resize setting via Picture Auto Resize (P.5-37).

If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 2 MB)


- Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

Advanced

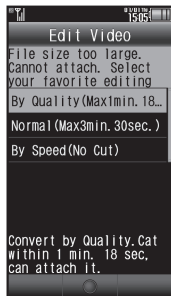
- Changing attached image size Set Auto Play File (And more on P.5-26 - 5-27)
- Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size Selecting size to which images are reduced when attaching (P.5-37)
- Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved (P.5-38)



Editing Video

Upon attaching a video file, Edit Video window may open depending on file size. To proceed, select an option and press .

- Edit Video window opens only for files recorded on handset.



- Some video files may be too long to send. To crop, see "Editing Video" (Chapter 8).

Sending Feeling Mail

Set emotion (happiness, sadness, etc.) to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly.

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message,  ➔ *Feeling Settings* ➔ 
- 2 Select category, e.g., *Happy/Glad* ➔ 
- 3 Select item, e.g., *I Love You* ➔ 



- 4  ➔ Transmission starts

Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window]

Select subject field ➔  ➔ Select

Pictogram ➔  ➔ 



Sending Graphic Mail

Basic Procedure

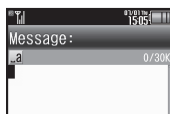
Follow these steps to:

- Change font size
- Insert images
- Scroll text

① ➔ **Create Message** ➔

② **Select/enter recipient and subject (P.5-4)**

③ **Select message text field**
➔



Text Entry Window

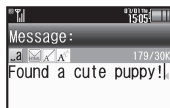
④



Graphic Mail Window

⑤ **SIZE** ➔

⑥ **Select size** ➔ ➔ **Enter text**



⑦ ➔ **IMAGE** ➔ ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ➔ **Select file**
➔

⑧ **Select target location** ➔
➔



⑨ ➔ **EFFECT** ➔

⑩ **Scrolling** ➔

⑪ **Select direction** ➔ ➔ **Enter text**

⑫ ➔ ➔ **Transmission starts**

Canceling Last Action

[Graphic Mail Window] **UNDO** ➔

Canceling All Graphic Mail Settings

[Graphic Mail Window] **CANCEL** ➔

➔ **Yes** ➔

Saving as Templates

After ⑪, ➔ ➔ **Save as**

Template ➔ ➔ **Enter name** ➔

➔ **Save here** ➔

- Only the message text is saved.

5

Messaging

Advanced

- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on P.5-27)





Using My Pictograms

My Pictograms are grouped by category; add or rename categories as needed.

- Source files are saved in Data Folder (My Pictograms).
- Save up to 1,000 additional My Pictograms on handset.
- Some preloaded My Pictograms appear in suggestion list when corresponding reading is typed.

1 In text entry window,



- My Pictogram List appears. (Log appears if My Pictogram has been used.)
- Press  or  to open next or previous Category.



2





3 Select Category



My Pictogram List

- Press  or  to open next or previous page, if any.

4 Select file

- To suppress message, press  (.








5

- List closes; enter text, add other decorative effects, etc.

6 Complete message






 ➔ **Transmission starts**

Moving/Copying My Pictograms

[My Pictogram List] Select file  
 (Long) ➔ **Move or Copy**  
 Press  or  to select Category
 ➔ **Select target location** 

- My Pictograms can also be moved/copied within the same Category.


Deleting My Pictograms

[My Pictogram List] Select file  
 (Long) ➔ **Delete**   **Yes** 




- Source files in Data Folder will be deleted.

Checking My Pictograms Individually

[My Pictogram List] Select file  
 (Long) ➔ **Preview** 

- To return, press .


Opening Data Folder (My Pictograms)

[My Pictogram List] Select file  
 (Long) ➔ **Access to Data Folder** 

Clearing Entry Log





• Open Log then follow these steps:
 Select file   (Long) ➔ **Delete This Log**   **Yes** 

Advanced

-  ● Creating Categories ● Editing Categories ● Changing Category order ● Opening Category properties ● Deleting Categories (P.5-28)

Converting from S! Mail




Convert S! Mail to Graphic Mail easily.

- 1 In text entry window, enter message ➡  (Long)
- 2 Select decoration type ➡  ➡  (Next) or  (Prev.)




- 3 
- 4  ➡  ➡ **Transmission starts**

Canceling Conversion

After 3,  ➡ **Cancel Arrangement**
➡  ➡ **Yes** ➡  ➡ 4

Using Templates





Create Graphic Mail from templates.

- 1  ➡ **Templates** ➡ 
- 2 Select template ➡ 
- 3 Complete message ➡  ➡ **Transmission starts**

Template Size

- Template size may change when used for creating messages.

Opening Templates from Text Entry Window (S! Mail)

- [Text Entry Window]  ➡ **Launch Template** ➡  ➡ **Select template** ➡  ➡ **Complete message** ➡ 
- If message text has already been entered, follow onscreen prompt to insert it.

Advanced

-   Using custom decoration type (P.5-27)



Using Signature

Save signature and insert it into message text automatically upon opening S! Mail Composition window. Alternatively, insert signature manually during text entry.

- Last saved/edited Decoration Signature or Text Signature is set as default signature.
- Created Decoration Signatures are saved to Templates folder (デコレメ署名).

Saving Signature

Follow these steps to create Decoration Signature for the first time:

- 1 ➔ **Create Message** ➔



S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 ➔ **Signature** ➔ ➔
- 3 **Select template** ➔

- 4 **Create signature** ➔

- 5 **Save** ➔

- To disable confirmation, press .

- 6 **Yes or No** ➔

- For **No**, a message appears; press .

Auto Insert Setting

- In , choose **Yes** to insert signature automatically upon opening S! Mail Composition window. To insert signature manually, follow these steps:

[S! Mail Composition Window] ➔ **Signature** ➔ ➔ **Auto Insert Setting** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔

Saving Text Signature

- Follow these steps after saving Decoration Signature:

[S! Mail Composition Window] ➔ **Signature** ➔ ➔ **Set/Edit Signature** ➔ ➔ **Text Signature** ➔ ➔ **Enter signature** ➔ ➔ **Yes or No** ➔

Inserting Signature Manually

- 1 **In S! Mail Composition window,**

- 2 **Signature** ➔ ➔ **Insert** ➔

- Last saved/edited signature is inserted.

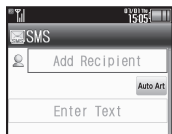
Advanced

- Editing Decoration Signatures ● Saving additional Decoration Signatures ● Inserting signature during text entry (P.5-25)

Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ➔ **Create New SMS** ➔



SMS Composition Window

2 **Select recipient field** ➔

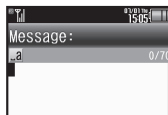
3 **Phone Book** ➔

4 **Select entry** ➔

5 **Select number** ➔

- Omit if only one number is saved.

6 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

7 **Enter message** ➔



SMS Composition Window

8 ➔ **Transmission starts**

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change by recipient type.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:

Yes ➔

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[SMS Composition Window] ➔

Switch Line ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

Entering Pictograms Automatically

After , **Auto Art** ➔ ➔ (Next)

or (Prev.) ➔ ➔

Using Quick Phrase

After , ➔ **Select text** ➔ ➔ ➔

Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Using Speed Dial/Mail list
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Changing SMS Server storage limit for outgoing message (And more on **P.5-24 - 5-26**)
- Changing SMS Server sent message storage limit
- Changing SMS Server number
- Changing character encoding for composing messages (**P.5-40**)



Restricting Outgoing Messages

Allow messaging to handset numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔
- 2 **Create/Send Settings** ➔
- 3 **Restrictions Setting** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔



Restrict Mail Menu

- 4 **Phonebook Entries** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

When Phonebook Entries is On

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Permitted List

Specifying Mail Addresses

- 1 In **Restrict Mail** menu, **Individual Address** ➔



Individual Address Menu

- 2 **Permitted List** ➔
- 3 **<Empty>** ➔
- 4 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address** ➔
 - Repeat 3 - 4 to add mail addresses.

Activating Permitted List

- 1 In **Individual Address** menu, **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 2 **On** ➔

Advanced

- Deleting Permitted List entries (P.5-38)



Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.
See **P.5-23** to receive PC Mail.



Important Message Retrieval Notes

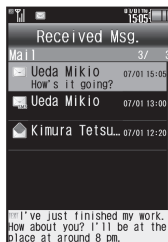
- By default, if message size is around 1 MB or less, the complete message including attachments is retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval outside Japan may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Auto Settings to **Off**; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

Delivery Report

- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:

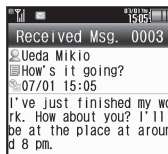
Delivery Report ➡ ➡ **Select message with report** ➡ ➡

1 Message ➡



Message List

2 Select message ➡



- Message window opens.

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Illumination, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

Enter or select answer ➡

- Message opens when the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is entered as the first character of subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

Mail Notice

- Depending on the setting (e.g., Auto Settings is **Off**), Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
 - The message was sent to multiple recipients
 - Files are attached to the message
- If message size exceeds 1 MB, Server sends only initial portion of message text regardless of Auto Settings status.
(Approximate size appears in message text.)

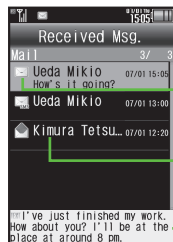
Advanced

- Accessing new mail out of Standby ● Retrieving new S! Mail manually ● Retrieving remaining portions (And more on **P.5-28**)
● Limiting incoming S! Mail message size ● Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ● Changing ringtone settings (And more on **P.5-36 - 5-37**)



Window Description

Message List



Message Type/Status
(see below)

Sender or Recipient

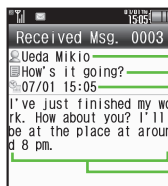
Message Text

Message Type/Status

	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Sent Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

"SMS" or "PC" appears accordingly on indicators.

Message Window



Sender or Recipient

Subject (except for SMS)

Received or
Sent Date & Time

Message Text

Press (X) to open next (newer) message,
or (#) to open previous (older) one.

Changing Font Size

[Message Window] (3) (Long) to
enlarge or (1) (Long) to reduce

Replying to Messages

- In message window,**
 - Mail Composition window opens.
 - Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).
- Complete message** ➡ ➡
Transmission starts

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After ①, To Sender or Reply All ➡

② ➡

Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying in Kanji (Hiragana) mode, this dictionary prioritizes original message words (katakana or alphanumerics) in suggestion list.

Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).

Advanced

- Saving attachments to Data Folder
- Saving to Phone Book
- Using linked info
- Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers
- Selecting mail type/quote option
- Replying quickly using fixed text
- Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.5-29 - 5-31)
- Selecting quote option (P.5-38)

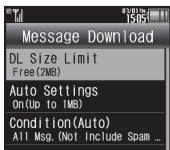


Customizing S! Mail Retrieval

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to manual (Server sends only initial portion of message text without attachments) or set handset to retrieve complete messages automatically by specifying sender type, mail address, etc.

Retrieving Messages Manually

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔
- 2 **Receive Settings** ➔
- 3 **Message Download** ➔



Message Download Menu

- 4 **Auto Settings** ➔

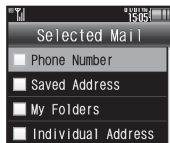
5 Off ➔

Retrieving Complete S! Mail Automatically when Approximate Size is 300 KB or Less
In 5, **On (Up to 300KB)** ➔

Restricting Automatic Retrieval

By Sender Type

- 1 In Message Download menu, **Condition (Auto)** ➔
- 2 **Selected Mail** ➔



Selected Mail Menu

- 3 **Select item** ➔ (/) ➔

By Mail Address

Specify mail addresses or domains (alphanumerics after @ of mail addresses).

- 1 In Selected Mail menu, **Individual Address** ➔
- 2 **Select blank entry** ➔
- 3 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address** ➔
 - Repeat 2 - 3 to add mail addresses.
- 4
- 5 () ➔

Restricting by Domain (Direct Entry)
[Selected Mail Menu] **Receive by the Domain** ➔ ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ➔ **Direct Entry** ➔ ➔ **Enter domain** ➔ ➔ ➔ 5

Advanced

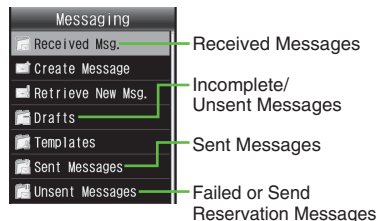
- Retrieving remaining portions (P.5-28)
- Retrieving all messages (including spam) automatically
- Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval (P.5-36)



Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:



When Failed Message is Saved

- A reminder message appears upon opening Messaging menu.

Checking Messages

- 1 → **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** →



Folder List

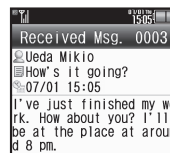
- When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
- Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press .

- 2 **Select folder** →



Message List

- 3 **Select message** →



Message Window

Protecting Messages

- 1 **In message list, select message** → → **Manage Msg.** →
- 2 **Lock** →

Canceling Protection

In , **Unlock** →

Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages
- Deleting messages
- Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list (And more on P.5-31 - 5-32)
- Forwarding messages
- Sending from Drafts
- Checking Server Mail message count and volume
- Changing view for Received Msg. folder
- Changing view for Sent Messages folder
- Showing complete sent/received message addresses (And more on P.5-34 - 5-35)



Moving Messages to Spam Folder

- 1 In message list, select message ➔
 - For PC Mail, skip ahead to 3.
- 2 Spam Measures Operation ➔
- 3 Go to Spam Measures Folder. ➔
 - If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** or **No** and press . Choose **Yes** to proceed with Sort Spam Mail settings; follow onscreen instructions.

Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

- 1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔
- 2 ➔ **Search** ➔
- 3 **Search All Msg.** ➔
- 4 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address or text** ➔

Searching by Folder

In 2, select folder ➔ ➔ **Search** ➔ ➔ **Search Folder** ➔ ➔ 4

Searching Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.
[Message Window] ➔ **Search Text** ➔ ➔ **Enter text** ➔
 - Press or to jump to next/previous search result.

Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within. Chat Folders are not affected.

- 1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔
- 2 **Select folder** ➔
- 3 **Set Secret** ➔ ➔

Accessing Secret Folders

After 1, ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Advanced

- Moving messages manually ● Renaming folders ● Deleting folders ● Deleting Spam Folder messages ● Adding folders ● Moving folders ● Changing status of all messages within folders to read ● Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders ● Canceling Secret (P.5-32 - 5-33)

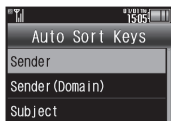


Sorting Messages

Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in subject or SMS message text.

- 1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔
- 2 **Select target folder** ➔
- 3 **My Folders** ➔ ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔



- 4 **Sender (Recipient for Sent Messages)** ➔
- 5 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔
- 6 ➔ **Saved**

Sorting by Domain (Direct Entry)

In 4, **Sender(Domain)**
(**Recipient(Domain)** for Sent Messages) ➔ ➔ **Direct Entry**
➔ ➔ **Enter domain** ➔ ➔

Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text

In 4, **Subject** ➔ ➔ **Enter text**
➔ ➔

Filtering Spam

Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:
(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Receive Settings** ➔
- 2 **Spam Mail Settings** ➔
- 3 **Sort Spam Mail** ➔

- 4 **Unregistered(Mobile)** ➔ (✓)

- 5 ➔

Exempting Messages from Filtering After 4, Permitted List(Common) ➔
 ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ➔ **Select key** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address/subject** ➔ ➔ ➔ (✓) ➔

When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

- Re-sorting messages Sorting spam by setting keys Editing/deleting sort keys (P.5-33)

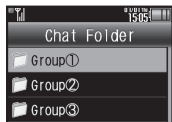


Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

Saving Members

- 1 ➔ **Chat Folder** ➔



Chat Folder List

- 2 **Select folder** ➔
- 3 **Add New Member** ➔
- 4 **Select blank entry** ➔
- Select saved member to edit number/address.
- 5 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔
- Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

- 6 ➔ **Saved**

Changing Members

In 4, select member ➔ ➔

Change Member ➔ ➔ **From** 5

Deleting Members

In 4, select member ➔ ➔ **Delete**

➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ 5

Opening Chat Folders

- 1 In Chat Folder list, select folder ➔

- 2 **Select message** ➔

Advanced

- Deleting folders Deleting all messages Resetting Chat Folders (P.5-33 - 5-34)



Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

First, save target recipients to Phone Book.

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ 

2 **Mail Groups** ➔ 



Mail Group Entry Window

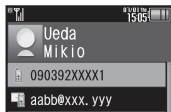
3 **<Add New Group>** ➔  ➔

Enter name ➔ 

4 **Select Group** ➔ 




5 **<Assign New Entry>** ➔ 

➔ **Select entry** ➔ 



6 **Select number or mail address** ➔ 



- Omit  if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat  -  to add members.

7  ➔ **Saved**

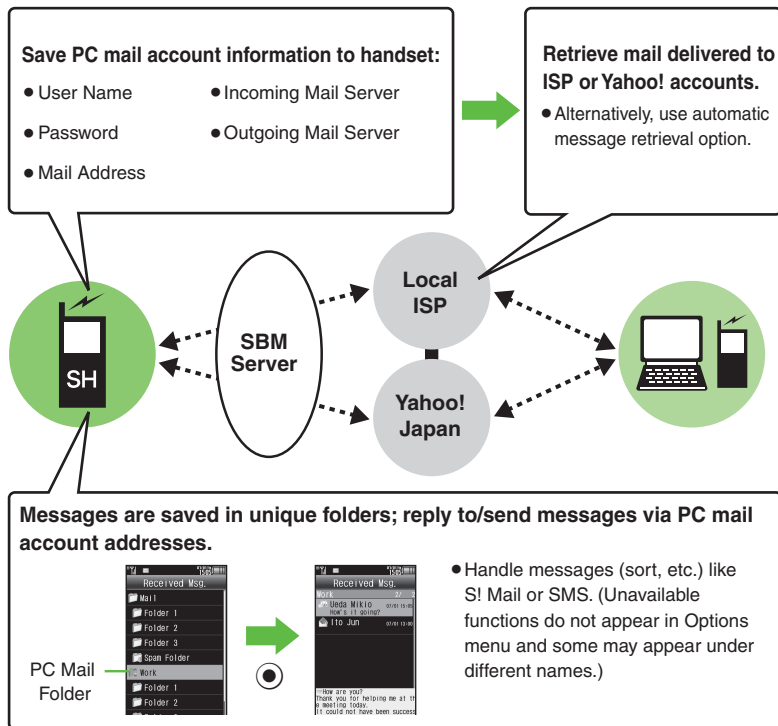
Advanced

-  ● Renaming Mail Groups ● Deleting Mail Groups/Group members ● Changing Mail Group members (P.5-34)



PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.



Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high packet transmission fees; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.



PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.


Mandatory Items for Retrieval



User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press .





1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **PC Mail Settings** ➔ 



2 **PC Mail Account** ➔ 

3 **<Empty>** ➔ 

4 **Account Name** ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔ 

5 **Set Receiving** ➔  ➔ **Select item** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter item** ➔  ➔ 

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.




6 **Set Sending** ➔  ➔ **Select item** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter item** ➔ 

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

7  ➔  ➔ 

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses

In , **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** ➔  ➔ **Yes or No** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Choose **No** to create a new account.

Editing Accounts












In , **select account** ➔  ➔ **From** 

Deleting Accounts

In , **select account** ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset
Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

In , **Set Sending** ➔  ➔ **Sender Auth.** ➔  ➔ **SMTP Auth.** ➔  ➔ **User Name** ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔  ➔ **Password** ➔  ➔ **Enter password** ➔  ➔  ➔  ➔ 

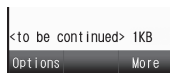


Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.



- 3 Select PC Mail folder** ➡ ●
➡ **Select message** ➡ ●



Message Window

- Press (Y) to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

Deleting Messages

[Message List] **Select message** ➡
ⓧ ➡ **Delete** ➡ ● ➡ **Select option**
➡ ● ➡ **Yes** ➡ ●

Retrieving Messages by Account

After ①, **select account** ➡ ● ➡ ③
■ Omit ③ if only one message is retrieved.

Checking Received PC Mail

- 1** ⓧ ➡ **Received Msg.** ➡ ●

➡ **Select folder** ➡ ●

- Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.

- 2 Select message** ➡ ●

- Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail

- 1 In message window,** (Y)

- PC Mail Composition window opens.
- Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).

- 2 Complete message** ➡ (Y) ➡
Transmission starts

Replying without Quoting Original Message Text

[Message Window] ⓧ ➡ **Reply** ➡
● ➡ **PC Mail** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ (Y)

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages

[PC Mail Composition Window]
Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ **From:**
➡ ● ➡ **Select account** ➡ ●

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

- 1** ⓧ ➡ **Create Message** ➡ ●

- 2 Select PC Mail Account** ➡ ●

- 3 Complete message** ➡ (Y) ➡
Transmission starts

Converting to S! Mail

After ②, ⓧ ➡ **Convert to S! Mail** ➡
● ➡ **Yes** ➡ ●

Note

- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

Advanced

- ① Retrieving complete PC Mail messages ● Retrieving new messages automatically ● Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder ● Disabling automatic word wrap ● Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses ● Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval ● Restricting complete message retrieval by size (P.5-38 - 5-39)



Creating/Sending Messages

Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ●
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Add Recipient → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → ☺
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → Select recipient → ☐ → Select status → ● → ☺ • Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
Saving Recipients (from Phone Book)	<p>[Start Here] [A-Z] → ● → Select number → See below</p> <p>Saving Recipients (from Phone Book) ● → Refer Phone Book → ● → Select entry → ● → ☺</p> <p>Creating Messages Create Message → ● • When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select S! Mail or SMS and press ●.</p>

Using Speed Dial/Mail list

Saving Recipients

☐ → Settings → ● → Speed Dial/Mail → ●
→ <Empty> → ● → Select entry → ● →
Select number or mail address → ● → Do not Assign → ● → ☺

Creating Messages

In Standby, [0-9] - [9-9] (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) → ☐
• When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** and press ●.

Editing/deleting recipients

[Start Here] In Mail Composition window, select recipient field → ● → See below

Editing Recipients

Select recipient → ● → Edit → ● → ☺

Deleting a Recipient

Select recipient → ☐ → Delete → ● → ☺

Deleting All Recipients

Select recipient → ☐ → Delete All → ● → Yes → ● → ☺

Editing/removing Rakutomo Link entries

[Start Here] [A-Z] → ● → Select entry → ☐ → See below

Editing Entries

Change Registered Contents → ● → Change the Use Address → ● → Mail address: → ● → Select new number/address → ● → ☺

Removing Entries

Remove → ● → Yes → ●



Editing Speed Dial/ Mail list	Start Here Settings Speed Dial/Mail See below
	Editing Entries Select entry Change Mail address: Select new number/address
	Removing Entries Select entry Remove Selected
	Removing All Entries Remove All

■ Message Text

Editing Decoration Signatures	In Mail Composition window, Signature Set/Edit Signature Edit Decoration Signature Select file <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen prompt. Edited file is set as default signature.
Saving additional Decoration Signatures	In Mail Composition window, Signature Set/Edit Signature Create New Decoration Signature Create signature Enter name <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Saved file is set as default signature.
Inserting signature during text entry	In text entry window, Insert/Font Size Signature <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If Switch to Graphic Mail confirmation appears, press . Signature is inserted below message text.
Inserting ASCII Art	In text entry window, Call ASCII Art
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window, Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail

■ Save, Send Reservation & Sent Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message, Save to Drafts
Sending automatically later	Start Here After completing message, Send Reservation See below
	Auto Send when Signal Returns Within the Network
	Designating Send Date/Time (within 30 days) Date & Time
Canceling sent S! Mail	Sent Messages Select folder Select message Set Sent Cancel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

■ Messaging Settings

- For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
- For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Delivery Report On <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Delivered, : Unknown, : Failed Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Priority Select
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, Messaging Settings Set Auto Delete On <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.



Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Reply Request ➤ ➤ On ➤ • Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Forward NG or Delete NG ➤ ➤ On ➤ • Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
Locking message with Quiz	[Start Here] In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Quiz ➤ ➤ Switch On/Off ➤ ➤ On ➤ ➤ See below • Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.
	Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice) Select question ➤ ➤ Selection ➤ ➤ Select number ➤ ➤ Enter/edit option ➤ ➤ Enter/edit all options ➤ Select answer ➤ ➤ ➤ • May be unavailable for some questions.
	Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry) Select question ➤ ➤ Match Characters ➤ ➤ Enter answer ➤ ➤ • May be unavailable for some questions.
	Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice) <Create Original> ➤ ➤ Enter question ➤ ➤ Selection ➤ ➤ Select number ➤ ➤ Enter option ➤ ➤ Complete entry ➤ ➤ Select answer ➤ ➤ ➤ ➤
	Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry) <Create Original> ➤ ➤ Enter question ➤ ➤ Match Characters ➤ ➤ Enter answer ➤ ➤
Editing assigned Quiz	In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Quiz ➤ ➤ Edit Question ➤ ➤ Edit question/options/answer ➤ (Ⓜ again after editing options) • Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.

Lowering size limit for outgoing SI Mail messages	In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Create Msg. Size ➤ ➤ 300KB ➤
Designating/editing reply-to address	[Start Here] In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Reply to Settings ➤ ➤ See below Designating Switch On/Off ➤ ➤ On ➤ ➤ Select method ➤ ➤ Select/enter address ➤ Editing Edit Address ➤ ➤ Edit ➤
Changing SMS Server storage limit for outgoing message	In Mail Composition window, ➤ Messaging Settings ➤ ➤ Expiry Time ➤ ➤ Select option ➤ • Available for SMS only.
Attachments	
Changing attached image size	Select attached file ➤ ➤ Resize Picture ➤ ➤ Select size ➤ • May be unavailable for some images.
Capturing/recording and attaching	[Start Here] In Mail Composition window, select attachment field ➤ ➤ See below Still Images Picture ➤ ➤ Take Picture ➤ ➤ ➤ to shoot ➤ Video Video ➤ ➤ Record Video ➤ ➤ ➤ to start recording ➤ ➤ to stop ➤ Accept ➤ ➤ Select storage media ➤ Sounds Sound ➤ ➤ Record Voice ➤ ➤ ➤ to start recording ➤ ➤ to stop ➤ Accept ➤ ➤ Select storage media ➤



■ Graphic Mail

Using custom decoration type

■ My Pictograms

Creating Categories	In text entry window, <Add New Entry> Folder Name: Enter name Reading 1: Enter reading Icon: Select Pictogram <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Created Categories appear in suggestion list when corresponding reading is typed.
Editing Categories	In text entry window, Select Category Edit Category Name Enter Select item
Changing Category order	In text entry window, Select Category Relocate Category Enter Select target location
Opening Category properties	In text entry window, Select Category Details Enter
Deleting Categories	In text entry window, Select Category Delete Category Enter Yes

Receiving/Opening Messages

■ Receiving

Accessing new mail out of Standby	(Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a PC Mail Account exists, select S! Mail and press . Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	Server Mail Box Mail List Yes
Retrieving remaining portions	Via Mail Notice In message list, select Mail Notice <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If retrieve size options appear, select one and press . Via Server Mail List Server Mail Box Mail List Select message <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press .
Retrieving all Server Mail	[Start Here] Server Mail Box See below Directly from Server Retrieve All Via Server Mail List Mail List Retrieve All <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press .



■ Message Window

Saving attachments to Data Folder	In message window, select file ➤ ➤ Save to Data Folder ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤ Save here ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For templates, Save as Template appears. (Omit file name entry step.)
Installing attached widgets	In message window, select file ➤ ➤ Install Attach ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤
Using attachments	<div>Start Here</div> In message window, select file ➤ ➤ See below As Wallpaper Set as Wallpaper ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤ Save here ➤ ➤ Vertical or Horizontal ➤ ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts. As Ringtone/Ringvideo Set as Ringtone or Set as Ring Video ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤ Save here ➤ ➤ Select item ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For For New Message or For New PC Mail, enter ring time and press .
Playing slides	In message window, ➤ Slide Play ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A slide consists of message text with attachments.

Saving to Phone Book

Saving Sender Address

In message window, ➤ **Save Address** ➤ ➤ Select number or mail address ➤ ➤ **As New Entry** ➤ ➤ Complete other fields ➤

- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.

Saving Linked Info

In message window, select number or mail address ➤ ➤ **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** ➤ ➤ **As New Entry** ➤ ➤ Complete other fields ➤

- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.

Using linked info

Dialing Numbers

In message window, select number ➤ ➤ **Call or Video Call** ➤

Sending Messages

In message window, select number or mail address ➤ ➤ **Create Message** ➤ ➤ **S! Mail or SMS** ➤ ➤ Complete message ➤

- For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.

Accessing Internet Sites

In message window, select URL ➤ ➤ **Yes** ➤

- Choose **Select Br.** to select a browser.

Saving Location Information URLs

In message window, select URL ➤ ➤ **RegisterMyLocation** ➤ ➤ **Name** ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤

Setting Location Information as Destination

In message window, select URL ➤ ➤ **Set to Destination** ➤ ➤ **Yes** ➤



Copying text	<p>Start Here In message window, ➔ Copy ➔ </p> <p>➔ See below</p>
	<p>Sender/Recipient Number/Address</p> <p>Address ➔ ➔ Select number/address ➔ </p>
	<p>Subject or Message Text</p> <p>Subject or Message Text ➔ ➔ Select first character ➔ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ </p>
Looking up message text words in dictionaries	<p>In message window, ➔ Copy & Search Dict. ➔ ➔ Select first character ➔ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ➔ Select dictionary ➔ ➔ Search ➔ ➔ Select word ➔ </p>
Jumping to message top/bottom	<p>In message window, ➔ View Settings ➔ ➔ Scroll Jump ➔ ➔ Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom ➔ </p>
Deleting attachments	<p>In message window, select file ➔ ➔ Remove File ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p>
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	<p>In message window, ➔ Report Spam ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Signature is not inserted automatically. Not available for PC Mail.
Saving attachments within Graphic Mail	<p>In Graphic Mail message window, ➔ Save Items ➔ ➔ Select file ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ </p>

Saving My Pictograms within Graphic Mail	<p>Start Here In Graphic Mail message window, ➔ Save Items ➔ ➔ Save My Pictograms ➔ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>All Files</p> <p>Save All ➔ ➔ Select folder ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ </p>
	<p>One File</p> <p>Select file ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Select folder ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ </p>
Saving Graphic Mail as templates	<p>Selected Files</p> <p> ➔ Select file ➔ ➔ / ➔ Complete selection ➔ ➔ Select folder ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ </p>
	<p>In Graphic Mail message window, ➔ Save as Template ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ </p>

■ Replying

Selecting mail type/quote option	<p>In message window, ➔ Reply ➔ ➔ Select type/option ➔ ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
Opening received message for reference	<p>In message window, ➔ Rep. with View ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
Replying quickly using fixed text	<p>Editing Quick Reply Text</p> <p> ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Create/Send Settings ➔ ➔ Reply Settings ➔ ➔ Set Quick Reply ➔ ➔ Select text ➔ ➔ Edit ➔ </p>
	<p>Using Quick Reply</p> <p>In message window, (Long) ➔ Select text ➔ </p>



Saving SMS messages to USIM Card	In message list, select SMS message ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Manage Msg.</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Move to USIM</i> ➔ ● • Not available for some SMS messages.
Changing received message status (read/unread)	In message list, select message ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Manage Msg.</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Switch to Unread or Switch to Read</i> ➔ ●

■ Deleting Messages

Deleting messages	One Message In message list, select message ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ● • Alternatively, delete an open message.
	All Messages In message list, ☰ ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Delete All or Except Locked Msg.</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●
	All Messages in Spam Folder In message list (Spam Folder), ☰ ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Delete All or Except Locked Msg.</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes or No</i> ➔ ●
	All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), ☰ ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●
Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice	In message list, select Mail Notice ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select option</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●

Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	Start Here ☰ ➔ <i>Server Mail Box</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Mail List</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>See below</i> • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●.
	One Message Select message ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	All Messages ☰ ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●
	Start Here ☰ ➔ <i>Server Mail Box</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>See below</i>
	All Retrieved Messages Except New Msg. ➔ ●
	All Messages <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ●

■ Folders

Moving messages manually	In message list, select message ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Manage Msg.</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Move to Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Select folder</i> ➔ ● • If sort messages confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.
Renaming folders	In folder list, select folder ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Rename</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Enter name</i> ➔ ● • Available in Chat Folder list as well.



Deleting folders	In folder list, select folder → → Delete → → Yes → • When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Deleting Spam Folder messages	In folder list, Spam Folder → → Delete → → Delete Spam Measures. → → Yes or No →
Adding folders	In folder list, → Create New Folder → → Enter name → • Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Moving folders	In folder list, select folder → → Relocate Folder → → Select target location →
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	In folder list, select folder → → To All Read → → Yes →
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	In folder list, select folder → → Protect → • To cancel protection, select Not Protect and press in the steps above.
Canceling Secret	Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder → → Unset Secret →

■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder → → Classify → • Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Sorting spam by setting keys	→ Settings → → Receive Settings → → Spam Mail Settings → → Sort Spam Mail → → Individual(Common) → (✓) → → Select blank entry → → Select key → → Select/enter number/address/subject → → → →
Editing/deleting sort keys	In folder list, select folder → → My Folders → → Select entry → See below Editing Sender/Recipient Key → Replace → → Select method → → Select/enter number/address → → Editing Subject Key → Edit → → Deleting an Entry → Delete → → Yes → → Deleting All Entries → Clear All → → Yes → →

■ Chat Folder

Deleting folders	→ Chat Folder → → Select folder → → Delete Folder → → Yes → • When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
------------------	---



Deleting all messages	☰ → Chat Folder → ● → Select folder → ● → ☰ → Manage Msg. → ● → Delete All → ● → Yes → ●
Resetting Chat Folders	☰ → Chat Folder → ● → ☰ → Reset → ● → Yes → ●
Mail Groups	
Renaming Mail Groups	☰ → Settings → ● → Mail Groups → ● → Select Group → ☰ → Edit Name → ● → Enter name → ● → Yes → ●
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	<p>Start Here ☰ → Settings → ● → Mail Groups → ● → Select Group → See below</p> <p>Mail Groups</p> <p>☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>Group Members</p> <p>● → Select member → ☰ → Remove Entry → ● → Yes → ● → ☰</p> <p>• Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.</p>
Changing Mail Group members	☰ → Settings → ● → Mail Groups → ● → Select Group → ● → Select member → ☰ → Re-assign Entry → ● → Select entry → ● → Select number or mail address → ● → Yes → ● → ☰

Using Messages

Forwarding messages	<p>In message window, ☰ → Forward → ● → Select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attached files are forwarded. To forward SMS messages, select S! Mail or SMS and press ●.
Sending from Drafts	☰ → Drafts → ● → Select message → ● → Complete message → ☰
Sending unsent messages	<p>Start Here ☰ → Unsent Messages → ● → Select message → ☰ → See below</p> <p>Sending without Editing</p> <p>Resend → ●</p> <p>Edit & Send</p> <p>Edit → ● → Complete message → ☰</p>
Using sent messages	☰ → Sent Messages → ● → Select folder → ● → Select message → ☰ → Edit & Send → ● → Complete message → ☰
Saving schedules from message list	<p>In message list, select message → ☰ → Manage Msg. → ● → Save to Calendar → ● → Enter subject → ● → Select Category → ● → Enter start/end date/time → ● → Complete other fields → ☰</p> <p>• Source message is accessible from schedule window (via Related Mail in Options menu).</p>



Forwarding Server Mail	Via Mail Notice In message list, select Mail Notice ➡ ☒ ➡ Forward ➡ ● ➡ Notifi. Forward (forward Mail Notice text only) or Remote Forward ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ☐
	Via Server Mail List ☒ ➡ Server Mail Box ➡ ● ➡ Mail List ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ☒ ➡ Remote Forward ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ ☐ • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●.
Opening Server Mail properties	☒ ➡ Server Mail Box ➡ ● ➡ Mail List ➡ ● ➡ Select message ➡ ☒ ➡ Message Details ➡ ● • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●.
Checking Server Mail message count and volume	☒ ➡ Server Mail Box ➡ ● ➡ Mailbox Volume ➡ ●

View Settings

Changing view for Received Msg. folder	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Received Msg. View ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Sent Msg. View ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing message list view	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Message List View ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●
Changing message window scroll unit	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Scroll Unit ➡ ● ➡ Select unit ➡ ●
Enabling sound auto-play	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Auto Play Attached Sound ➡ ● ➡ On ➡ ● • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Disabling image auto-resize	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Picture Appearance ➡ ● ➡ Normal ➡ ● • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Disabling Animation View	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Animation View ➡ ● ➡ Off ➡ ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	☒ ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ View Settings ➡ ● ➡ Address View ➡ ● ➡ Show All ➡ ●



Receive Settings

Limiting incoming S! Mail message size	☰ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Receive Settings ➔ ● ➔ Message Download ➔ ● ➔ DL Size Limit ➔ ● ➔ Restricted(300KB) ➔ ● • Exceeding attachments are reduced (images) or deleted (other files) at Server.
Retrieving all messages (including spam) automatically	☰ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Receive Settings ➔ ● ➔ Message Download ➔ ● ➔ Condition(Auto) ➔ ● ➔ All Message ➔ ● • Available when Sort Spam Mail is active.
Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	[Start Here] ☰ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Receive Settings ➔ ● ➔ Message Download ➔ ● ➔ Condition(Auto) ➔ ● ➔ Selected Mail ➔ ☰ ➔ See below One Entry (Mail Address) Individual Address ➔ ☰ ➔ Select entry ➔ ☰ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ (Y) All Entries (Mail Address) Individual Address ➔ ☰ ➔ Select entry ➔ ☰ ➔ Clear All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ (Y) One Entry (Domain) Receive by the Domain ➔ ☰ ➔ Select entry ➔ ☰ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ (Y) All Custom Entries (Domain) Receive by the Domain ➔ ☰ ➔ Select entry ➔ ☰ ➔ Clear All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ (Y)
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	☰ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Receive Settings ➔ ● ➔ Auto Delete Received Msg. ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●

Changing alerts for messages received during handset use

[Start Here] ☰ ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Receive Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Other Than Standby Screen** ➔ ● ➔ See below

Showing New Message Window

Incoming Display Setting ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

Selecting Scrolling Notice Option

View Setting ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●

Muting Alert Sound

Alert Sound ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders

☰ ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Receive Settings** ➔ ●
 ➔ **Secret Folder** ➔ ● ➔ **No Response** ➔ ●

Hiding graphics above Information window

☰ ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Receive Settings** ➔ ●
 ➔ **Link to Feeling** ➔ ● ➔ **Standby Screen Info.** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Changing illumination settings

[Start Here] ☰ ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Receive Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Link to Feeling** ➔ ● ➔ **Set Illumi.** ➔ ● ➔ See below

Disabling Illumination

Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Changing Illumination Pattern

Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ Select category ➔ ● ➔

Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ●

• Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Key Illumination Pattern

Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔

Select pattern ➔ ●

• Not effective when Switch On/Off is set to **Link to Sound**.



Selecting Vibration option	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Receive Settings ➤ ➤ Link to Feeling ➤ ➤ Vibration Pattern ➤ ➤ Select option ➤
Changing ringtone settings	<div> ➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Receive Settings ➤ ➤ Link to Feeling ➤ ➤ Ringtone ➤ ➤ See below </div> <div> Muting Ringer Switch On/Off ➤ ➤ Off ➤ </div> <div> Changing Ringtones Assign Tone ➤ ➤ Select category ➤ ➤ Select folder ➤ ➤ Select tone/file ➤ </div> <div> Changing Duration Duration ➤ ➤ Enter time ➤ </div>
Changing spam report recipient	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Receive Settings ➤ ➤ Spam Mail Settings ➤ ➤ Report Spam ➤ ➤ Edit address ➤ ➤ Yes ➤

Create/Send Settings

Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Create/Send Settings ➤ ➤ Create Msg. Size ➤ ➤ 300KB or Confirm(When exceed 300KB) ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.
Selecting size to which images are reduced when attaching	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Create/Send Settings ➤ ➤ Picture Auto Resize ➤ ➤ Select option ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to Ask Each Time to select size every time an image is attached.
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Create/Send Settings ➤ ➤ Sending Status ➤ ➤ Off(Background) ➤
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Create/Send Settings ➤ ➤ Auto Resend ➤ ➤ Off ➤
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Create/Send Settings ➤ ➤ Auto Delete Sent Msg. ➤ ➤ Not Auto Del ➤
Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Create/Send Settings ➤ ➤ Send Option ➤ ➤ Delivery Report ➤ ➤ On ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effective for messages addressed to SoftBank handsets.



Designating/ editing reply-to address	<p>Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Create/Send Settings ➔ ➔ Send Option ➔ ➔ Reply to Settings ➔ ➔ See below</p> <p>Designating Switch On/Off ➔ ➔ On ➔ ➔ Select method ➔ ➔ Select/enter address ➔ </p> <p>Editing Edit Address ➔ ➔ Edit ➔ </p>
Selecting quote option	<p> ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Create/Send Settings ➔ ➔ Reply Settings ➔ ➔ Reply With Text ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ </p>
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	<p> ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Create/Send Settings ➔ ➔ Send File Settings ➔ ➔ Attach Only ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting applies to PC Mail as well. Depending on camera settings (Auto Save and Background Save), files are saved when opening Mail Composition window via newly captured image or newly recorded video regardless of the setting above.
Deleting Permitted List entries	<p>Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Create/Send Settings ➔ ➔ Restrictions Setting ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ Individual Address ➔ ➔ Permitted List ➔ ➔ Select entry ➔ ➔ See below</p> <p>One Entry Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p> <p>All Entries Clear All ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p>

PC Mail Settings

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	<p> ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ ➔ PC Mail DL ➔ ➔ All Contents ➔ </p>
Retrieving new messages automatically	<p>Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ ➔ Check New Mail ➔ ➔ See below</p> <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Check New Mail ➔ ➔ On ➔ ➔ Select account ➔ (✓) ➔ ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting Check New Mail to On may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur packet transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan. Handset does not check for new messages between 10:00 PM and 6:00 AM; change/cancel Inactive Time as needed. <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Outside Japan Abroad ➔ ➔ Enable ➔ ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges. <p>Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval Interval ➔ ➔ Select interval ➔ </p> <p>Changing Inactive Time Inactive Time ➔ ➔ Start Time: ➔ ➔ Enter start time ➔ ➔ End Time: ➔ ➔ Enter end time ➔ </p> <p>Canceling Inactive Time Inactive Time ➔ ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>



Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	In folder list, select PC Mail folder ➡ ☐ ➡ <i>Retrieve New</i> ➡ ●
Disabling automatic word wrap	☐ ➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>PC Mail Settings</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>Word wrap</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>Off</i> ➡ ●
Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	<i>Start Here</i> ☐ ➡ <i>Settings</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>PC Mail Settings</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>PC Mail DL</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>PC Mail DL</i> ➡ ● ➡ <i>DL All From List</i> ➡ ☐ ➡ See below
	<i>Selecting Sender Types</i> Select item ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ ☐
	<i>Specifying Addresses</i> <i>Individual Address</i> ➡ ☐ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter address ➡ ● ➡ ☐
	<i>Specifying Domains (Direct Entry)</i> <i>Receive by the Domain</i> ➡ ☐ ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ <i>Direct Entry</i> ➡ ● ➡ Enter domain ➡ ● ➡ ☐

Deleting addresses/
domains specified
for complete
message retrieval

Start Here ☐ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *DL All From List* ➡ ☐ ➡ See below

One Entry (Mail Address)

Individual Address ➡ ☐ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☐
➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☐

All Entries (Mail Address)

Individual Address ☐ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☐
➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☐

One Entry (Domain)

Receive by the Domain ➡ ☐ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☐
☐ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☐

All Entries (Domain)

Receive by the Domain ➡ ☐ ➡ Select entry ➡ ☐
☐ ➡ *Clear All* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ☐

Restricting
complete message
retrieval by size

☐ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *PC Mail Settings* ➡ ●
➡ *PC Mail DL* ➡ ● ➡ *Max DL Size* ➡ ● ➡
Select account ➡ ● ➡ Select size ➡ ●
• Effective when PC Mail DL is set to *All Contents* or *DL All From List*.



SMS Settings

Changing SMS
Server sent message
storage limit

☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **SMS Settings** ➤ ● ➤
Expiry Time ➤ ● ➤ **Select option** ➤ ●

Changing SMS
Server number

Start Here ☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **SMS Settings**
➤ ● ➤ **Message Center** ➤ ● ➤ **See below**

Editing

Setting1(Default) to **Setting3** ➤ ● ➤ **Edit
number** ➤ ●

- Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.

Deleting

Setting2 or **Setting3** ➤ ☰ ➤ **Delete** ➤ ● ➤
Yes ➤ ●

Activating

Setting2 or **Setting3** ➤ ☰ ➤ **Set Default** ➤ ●
• Activated number moves to **Setting1(Default)** and
shifts the others down.

Changing character
encoding for
composing
messages

☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **SMS Settings** ➤ ● ➤
Char-code ➤ ● ➤ **Select encoding** ➤ ●



































































































































- Attachment size affects text size limit.
In turn, text size affects attachment
size limit.

- Attachment size affects text size limit.
In turn, text size affects attachment
size limit.



- To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure →  → **Select**
message →  →  →  → 

- To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure ➡  ➡ **Select**
message ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡  ➡



- Auto Resend makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Resend unsent message(s) manually.

- Auto Resend makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Resend unsent message(s) manually.



- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.



- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.



- These settings cannot be applied to a message simultaneously (select one):
Set Auto Delete, Reply Request,
Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set
Auto Play File.

- These settings cannot be applied to a message simultaneously (select one):
Set Auto Delete, Reply Request,
Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set
Auto Play File.



- Not available for SMS.

- Not available for SMS.














- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.



- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup. Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:

 → **Settings** →  → **PC Mail**
Settings →  → **PC Mail Account**
 →  → **Select account** →  →
Set Sending →  → **Sender Auth.**
 →  → **SMTP Auth.** →  → **User**
Name or Password → 

- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup. Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
-  → **Settings** →  → **PC Mail**
Settings →  → **PC Mail Account**
 →  → **Select account** →  →
Set Sending →  → **Sender Auth.**
 →  → **SMTP Auth.** →  → **User**
Name or Password → 




Incoming Messages

? Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.





? A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose **Yes** and press . Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

? Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

? Message text appears distorted


- Follow these steps to change encoding:
[Message Window]  ➔ **View Settings** ➔  ➔ **Char-code** ➔  ➔ **Select option** ➔ 

Handling Messages

? Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

? Cannot receive messages

- If  appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.5-32).
- If **out** appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

? S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

? Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

? Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



Internet Services	6-2
Service Basics	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3
PC Sites	6-5
Browsing PC Sites.....	6-5
Browsing.....	6-6
Basic Operations	6-6

Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-9
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages....	6-9
RSS Feeds	6-10
Updating Blogs & News.....	6-10
Additional Functions	6-11
Troubleshooting.....	6-19

6

Internet



Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser or Direct Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.17-24**).
- Outside Japan, Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser cannot be used over Wi-Fi.


Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. (Information fees may also apply.) To prevent automatic connection, select an appropriate option for **Script Settings**, **Flash® auto-download** and **Download Videos** (**P.6-18**).

Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Opening Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GMO GlobalSign, RSA Security, SECOM Trust Systems and Comodo Japan cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.



Using Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai sites via 3G Network or Wi-Fi.

- To use Wi-Fi, subscribe to Keitai Wi-Fi and complete related settings.
- Within registered access point range, handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible; switch between 3G and Wi-Fi manually.
- Network does not switch to Wi-Fi automatically if Wi-Fi signal reception is poor or after switching it to 3G manually.
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.


Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.


1 ➔ Connection starts



Internet Page


- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu opens.
- To disconnect, press .

2 Highlight menu item ➔

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat  to open additional links.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes



Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]  ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]  ➔ Forward ➔ 

Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Internet Page]  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ 

User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔  ➔ 






Accessing メニューリスト Directly

 ➔ Yahoo! ➔  ➔ Menu List ➔ 

Switching between 3G and Wi-Fi Manually

[Internet Page]  ➔ Convenient Functions ➔  ➔ Switch Wi-Fi/3G ➔  ➔ Select network ➔ 

Advanced

-   Switching browsers
-  Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)
-  Clearing authentication information (And more on P.6-11)
-  Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on P.6-18)




Playing Media during Download

Play files while they transfer from the server (progressive download) or stream media files.

- Save progressive download files, as needed, after playback. (Copy protected files cannot be saved.)
- Streaming media files cannot be saved even after playback.
- Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi) even while playback is paused.


- 1 On a page, select file ➡ 
 - Playback starts.

Pausing Playback

- To resume playback, press .
- Progressive download continues even while playback is paused.

Stopping Playback




- Progressive download continues on the page even while playback is stopped. (Press  to resume playback.)







Stopping Progressive Download

- During playback,  ➡ Previous page returns ➡ 







Playback Sound

- Sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting.






Using History

- 1  ➡ **Yahoo!** ➡  ➡ **History** ➡ 
- 2 **Select record** ➡  ➡ **Connection starts**
 - Corresponding page opens.
- 3  ➡ **Yes** ➡  ➡ **Page closes**

Entering URLs Directly

- 1  ➡ **Yahoo!** ➡  ➡ **Enter URL** ➡ 
- 2 **Enter URL** ➡  ➡ **Connection starts**
 - Corresponding page opens.
- 3  ➡ **Yes** ➡  ➡ **Page closes**

Advanced

-   Using previously entered URLs  Deleting History records  Sorting History records (And more on **P.6-11**)
-  Customizing media playback settings (And more on **P.6-15**)



Browsing PC Sites

View PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser or Direct Browser. (Direct Browser requires Wi-Fi connection.)

- To use Wi-Fi, subscribe to Keitai Wi-Fi and complete related settings.
- When using PC Site Browser within registered access point range, handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible; switch between 3G and Wi-Fi manually.
- Network does not switch to Wi-Fi automatically if Wi-Fi signal reception is poor or after switching it to 3G manually.
- Browsing PC sites via PC Site Browser may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.
- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- PC Site Browser and Direct Browser share Bookmarks, Saved Pages, History, etc.

- 1 ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔
- 2 **PC Site Browser or Direct Browser** ➔
- 3 **Homepage** ➔ ➔ **Connection starts**



Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
 - If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
 - To disconnect, press .
- 4 **Highlight menu item** ➔
 - Corresponding page opens.
 - Repeat 4 to open additional links.
 - 5 ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Page closes**

Direct Browser

- Use this Wi-Fi-based browser to view PC sites without using SoftBank 3G Network service.

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page] ➔ **Forward** ➔

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page] ➔ **Homepage** ➔

User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔ ➔

Using History

In , **History** ➔ ➔ **Select record** ➔

Entering URLs Directly

In , **Enter URL** ➔ ➔ **Enter URL** ➔

Switching between 3G and Wi-Fi Manually (PC Site Browser)

[Internet Page] ➔ **Convenient Functions** ➔ ➔ **Switch Wi-Fi/3G** ➔ ➔ **Select network** ➔

Advanced

- Switching browsers
- Using previously entered URLs
- Deleting History records
- Opening History properties (And more on P.6-11)
- Showing navigation map for continuous scroll
- Changing scroll unit
- Hiding PC Site Browser messages
- Setting up proxy
- Setting search engine URLs (And more on P.6-14)



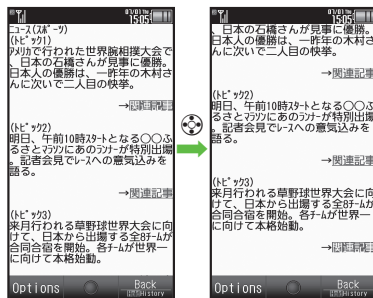
Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

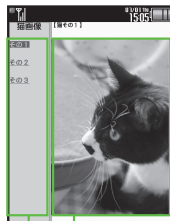
If page content continues beyond view, use to scroll pages.

Long Press to scroll continuously.



Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press to switch active frame.



Frames

- In pointer navigation, point to a frame and press to select it.
- Otherwise, use to select one.
- Alternatively, tap a frame to select it.

Viewing Single Frame

[Internet Page] Select frame

Convenient Functions

Frame In

- To return, press .

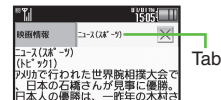
Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

Opening a New Tab

1 On a page, select menu item **Tab Menu**

2 **Open in New Tab**



Switching Tabs

1 (Long) **Select tab**

- In pointer navigation, point to a tab and press to open it.
- Alternatively, tap a tab to open it.

Closing Tabs

(Long) **Select tab** **Tab Menu** **Close Tab** or **Close All Other Tabs**

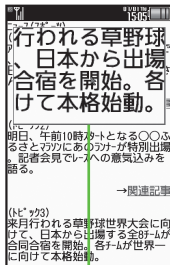
Advanced

- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Saving files to Data Folder
- Changing Font Size
- Enlarging specific areas
- Disabling automatic image display/sound playback
- Changing scroll unit (And more on P.6-12 - 6-14)

Selecting Items in Enlarged View

Enlarge area to select items with finger.

1 On a page, Long Touch area



Enlarged View

2 Drag to highlight item in enlarged view ➡ Release

Enlarging Areas in Pointer Navigation
[Internet Page] Point to area ➡

7 (Long)

- Use to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press to execute it.
- To close enlarged view, press a key other than .

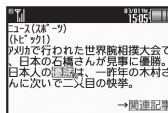
Selecting Text

Activate Drag Mode in pointer navigation to enable text selection. Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries. Follow these steps to use a dictionary:
(Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.)

1 On a page, point to first character ➡ (Long)

- Drag Mode is activated.

2 Highlight text range



3

4 ➡ Select dictionary

- Dictionary opens with text inserted.

5 Search ➡ ➡ Select word, etc. ➡

Starting Over

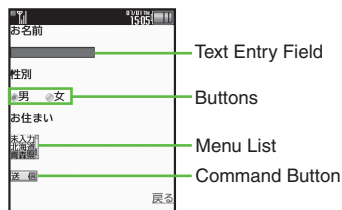
After 3, point to first character ➡

➡ From 2



Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.



Text Entry

1 On a page, select text entry field ➡

2 Enter text ➡
 • Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)

[Internet page] Select text entry field

➡ ➡ ➡ Insert/Font Size ➡
 ➡ Input Memory ➡ ➡ Select text
 ➡

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 On a page, select menu list field ➡

2 Select item ➡

When Multiple Selection is Supported

• Select items as needed and press .

Page Item Indicators

Selection Items

Buttons or boxes appear.

1 On a page, select button or box ➡



• / changes to / .

Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

1 On a page, select command
 ➡



Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page, **Bookmarks** **<Add New Entry>**
- 2 Check/edit URL
- 3 Check/edit title
- 4 Save

Opening Bookmarks

- 1 **Yahoo!** **Bookmarks**
- 2 Select title
 - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Bookmarks Lists

After 1, **Change List** **Select type**

Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page] **Bookmarks** **Select title**

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

Some pages may not be saved.

- 1 On a page, **Saved Pages** **Save (or Register(Image Only))**
 - Select **Register(Image Only)** to capture page content as a screenshot.
- 2 Check/edit title

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 **Yahoo!** **Saved Pages**
- 2 Select page
 - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Saved Pages Lists

After 1, **Change List** **Select type**

Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page] **Saved Pages** **Open List** **Select page**

Advanced

- Deleting titles Editing titles Changing title order Sorting titles into folders Deleting pages Editing page titles Changing page order (And more on P.6-15 - 6-16)



Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites.

Packet transmission fees apply (except when handling RSS feeds via Wi-Fi).

Subscribing to RSS Feeds

Indicator below appears for RSS-compatible sites.



RSS Indicator

Available for PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

1 On a compatible page, [RSS icon] ➔ Register In RSS Feed ➔ [OK]

2 Select feed ➔ [RSS icon] ([] / [X]) ➔ Complete selection ➔ [Y]

3 Save ➔ [OK]
 • Choose **Yes** to update immediately or **No** and press [OK].

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible. Available for PC Site Browser and Direct Browser.

1 On a page, select icon ➔ [OK]

2 Yes ➔ [OK] ➔ Save ➔ [OK]

Checking Updates

Follow these steps to update all feeds:

1 [RSS icon] ➔ Yahoo! ➔ [OK]

2 PC Site Browser or Direct Browser ➔ [RSS icon] ➔ RSS Feed ➔ [OK]



RSS Feed List

3 Reload All ➔ [OK]

• If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

4 Select feed ➔ [OK]



Title List

5 Select title ➔ [OK]

• Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds

[RSS Feed List] Select feed ➔ [RSS icon] ➔ Reload ➔ [OK]

▪ If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Accessing Source Sites

After [RSS icon], select linked title ➔ [OK] ➔ Yes ➔ [OK]

▪ If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

- Disabling feed updates
- Sorting feeds into folders
- Deleting feeds
- Sorting feeds
- Opening feed properties
- Exchanging feeds with other devices
- Sending feeds via mail (P.6-17)

Connecting & Browsing

■ General

Switching browsers	On a page, ☰ ➔ Switch Browser ➔ ● ➔ This Page or Linked Page ➔ ● ➔ Select browser ➔ ● • A confirmation may appear when switching to PC Site Browser.
Using previously entered URLs	Start Here ● ➔ Yahoo! ● ➔ See below Yahoo! Keitai Enter URL ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ URL Entry Log ➔ ● ➔ Select URL ➔ ● ➔ ● PC Site Browser & Direct Browser PC Site Browser or Direct Browser ➔ ● ➔ ● Enter URL ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ URL Entry Log ➔ ● ➔ Select URL ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ●

■ History

Follow these steps to switch History lists:

☰ ➔ **Change List** ➔ ● ➔ **Select browser** ➔ ●

Deleting History records	Start Here ● ➔ Yahoo! ● ➔ ● ➔ History ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ See below One Record Select record ➔ ☰ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● All Records ☰ ➔ Delete All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
--------------------------	--

Opening History properties	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ History ➔ ● ➔ Select record ➔ ☰ ➔ Details ➔ ●
Sorting History records	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ History ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Sort ➔ ● ➔ By Domain or By Date ➔ ●
Sending History records via mail	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ History ➔ ● ➔ Select record ➔ ☰ ➔ Send URL ➔ ● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ ☹ • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

■ Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser) ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** ➔ ●

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Memory Operation ➔ ● ➔ Delete Cache ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
Clearing cookies	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Memory Operation ➔ ● ➔ Delete Cookies ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
Clearing authentication information	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Memory Operation ➔ ● ➔ Delete Auth Info ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●



Page Operations

■ All Browsers

Using linked info	Dialing Numbers On a page, highlight number → ● → <i>Call</i> or <i>Video Call</i> → ●
	Sending Messages On a page, highlight number or mail address → ● → <i>Create Message</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ● • For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.
Copying text	On a page, ☰ → <i>Copy Text</i> → ● → <i>Select first character</i> → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, ☰ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Copy & Search Dict.</i> → ● → <i>Select first character</i> → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ● → <i>Select dictionary</i> → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → <i>Select word, etc.</i> → ●
Using Web Search	On a page, ☰ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Web Search</i> → ● → <i>Enter search text</i> → ●
Searching current page	On a page, ☰ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → <i>Enter search text</i> → ● • Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, ☰ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Jump In Page</i> → ● → <i>Page Top</i> or <i>Page Bottom</i> → ●
Opening page properties	On a page, ☰ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → <i>Select item</i> → ●
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, ☰ → <i>Send URL</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ● • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Handling Flash® files

[Start Here] On a page, ☰ → *Convenient Functions* → ● → *Flash® Menu* → ● → See below

Pausing/Playing

Pause, Resume or *Replay* → ●

Selecting Image Quality

Quality → ● → *Select quality* → ●

Saving files to Data Folder

[Start Here] On a page, ☰ → *Save Items* → ● → See below

Files on Page

Select file → ● → *Save* → ● → *Enter name* → ● → *Save here* → ●

- On a page with background image, select *Save Items* and press ● first.
- Some files are saved automatically.
- End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand.
- Be sure signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.

Background Images

Save Background Image → ● → *Save* → ● → *Enter name* → ● → *Save here* → ●

Updating page content

On a page, ☰ → *Reload* → ●
 • To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.

Changing encoding to read garbled text

On a page, ☰ → *Settings* → ● → *Char-code* → ● → *Select option* → ●

Opening Help

On a page, ☰ → *Help* → ●



■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing Font Size	On a page, (3+) (Long) to enlarge or (1-) (Long) to reduce
Enlarging pages 200%	On a page, (200%) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (200%) to toggle size. Size may not change depending on the page.

■ PC Site Browser & Direct Browser

Switching view	On a page, (=) → PC Screen or Small Screen → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page, (3+) (Long) to enlarge or (1-) (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page, (5+) (Long) → Quick Movement map appears → Select target location → ●
Enlarging specific areas	On a page, point to area (7+) (Long) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use (4) to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press (●) to execute it. To close enlarged view, press a key other than (4).
Hiding Softkeys	On a page, (=) → Convenient Functions → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Softkey Area → ● → Off → ● To show Softkeys temporarily, press (▶).
Enlarging images 200%	On a page, (200%) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (200%) to toggle size. Size may not change or layout may be affected depending on the page.

Internet Page Settings

■ All Browsers

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings → ●**.

PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser) → ● → PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser) → ●

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	Start Here → ● → Yahoo! → ● → Browser Settings → ● → Downloads → ● → See below Image Display Images → ● → Do not Show → ● Sound Playback Sounds → ● → Do not Play → ●
Changing Font Size	● → Yahoo! → ● → Browser Settings → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●
Using pointer navigation	Start Here → ● → Yahoo! → ● → Browser Settings → ● → Cursor Settings → ● → See below Activating Cursor Mode Settings → ● → Normal Mode → ● Changing Pointer Speed Speed Settings → ● → Select speed → ●
Using handset as primary download storage	● → Yahoo! → ● → Browser Settings → ● → Download to → ● → Phone Preferred → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some files may be saved to Memory Card regardless of this setting.



■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit	● → Yahoo! → ● → Browser Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●
----------------------	---

■ PC Site Browser & Direct Browser

For Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **PC Site Browser** → ● → **PC Site Browser Settings** → ●.

Direct Browser → ● → **Set Direct Browser** → ●

Showing navigation map for continuous scroll	● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → PC Site Browser Settings → ● → Scroll Settings → ● → Page Navigation → ● → On → ●
--	--

Changing scroll unit	● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → PC Site Browser Settings → ● → Scroll Settings → ● → Scroll Unit → ● → Select unit → ●
----------------------	---

■ PC Site Browser

Hiding PC Site Browser messages	● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → PC Site Browser Settings → ● → Warning Message → ● → Off → ●
---------------------------------	---

■ Direct Browser

Restricting Direct Browser use	● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Direct Browser Lock → ● → On → ● → Enter Administrator Code → ●
--------------------------------	--

Setting up proxy

[Start Here] → ● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Proxy Setting → ● → Enter Administrator Code → ● → Use → ● → See below
--

Entering Address

Proxy Address → ● → Enter address → ● → [Y]

Entering Port Number

Port Number → ● → Enter number → ● → [Y]
--

Specifying Addresses to Bypass Proxy

Exempted Address → ● → ● → Enter address → ● → [Y]
--

Editing proxy settings

● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Proxy Setting → ● → Enter Administrator Code → ● → Use → [⊞] → Select item → ● → Edit → [Y]
--

Changing home page

● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Homepage Setting → ● → Enter URL → ●

Setting search engine URLs

[Start Here] → ● → Yahoo! → ● → Direct Browser → ● → Set Direct Browser → ● → Search Page → ● → See below

Adding

<Empty> → ● → ● → Enter URL → ●

Changing

Select URL → ●

Editing

Select URL → [⊞] → ● → Edit → ●



Streaming & Progressive Download

General

Customizing media playback settings	Start Here During playback, Settings See below
	Changing Playback Size Display Size Select size • Playback size may not change depending on file.
	Setting Backlight Status Backlight Select option • Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight settings.
	Adjusting Sound Effects Sound Effects Select effect

Streaming

Streaming from Media Player	Start Here Entertainment Media Player Streaming See below
	Resuming from Stopped Point Last Played
	Using Bookmarks Bookmarks Select title
	Using History History Select record
Switching networks during media playback	During playback, Switch Wi-Fi/3G Select network

Bookmarks

Deleting titles	Start Here Yahoo! Bookmarks See below
	One Title Select title Delete Yes
	All Titles Delete All Yes
Editing titles	Yahoo! Bookmarks Select title Edit Title: Enter title
Editing bookmarked URLs	Yahoo! Bookmarks Select title Edit URL: Edit
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	Yahoo! Bookmarks Select title Send As Message S! Mail or SMS Complete message • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Changing title order	Yahoo! Bookmarks Select title Change Order Select target location
Opening title properties	Yahoo! Bookmarks Select title Details



Sorting titles into folders

Start Here	→	Yahoo!	→	→	Bookmarks	→	→	See below
Creating Folders								
☰	→	Create Folder	→	→	Enter name	→	→	
Moving to Folders								
Select title	→	☰	→	Move	→	→	Select folder	
→	→	→	→	Move	→	→	→	
Moving from Folders								
Select folder	→	→	Select title	→	☰	→	Move	
→	→	→	→	Move	→	→	→	
Renaming Folders								
Select folder	→	☰	→	Rename	→	→	Enter name	→
→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	
Deleting All Titles within a Folder								
Select folder	→	→	Select title	→	☰	→	→	
Delete All	→	→	Yes	→	→	→	→	
Deleting Folders								
Select folder	→	☰	→	Delete	→	→	Yes	→
→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	

Saved Pages

Start Here	→	Yahoo!	→	→	Saved Pages	→	→	See below
Deleting pages								
One Page								
Select page	→	☰	→	Delete	→	→	Yes	→
→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	
All Pages								
☰	→	Delete All	→	→	Yes	→	→	
Editing page titles								
→	→	Yahoo!	→	→	Saved Pages	→	→	
Select page	→	☰	→	Rename	→	→	Enter title	→
→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	
Changing page order								
→	→	Yahoo!	→	→	Saved Pages	→	→	
Select page	→	☰	→	Change Order	→	→	→	
Select target location	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	
Opening page properties								
→	→	Yahoo!	→	→	Saved Pages	→	→	
Select page	→	☰	→	Details	→	→	→	
Switching page list view								
→	→	Yahoo!	→	→	Saved Pages	→	→	
Select page	→	☰	→	List View or Preview View	→	→	→	
→	→	→	→	→	→	→	→	



RSS Feeds

For Direct Browser, select **Direct Browser** instead of **PC Site Browser**.

Disabling feed updates	<p>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Restrict Update → ●</p>
Sorting feeds into folders	<p>Start Here ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p>Creating Folders ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Create Folder → ● → Enter name → ●</p> <p>Moving to Folders Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Move → ● → Select folder → ● → Move → ●</p> <p>Renaming Folders Select folder → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Rename → ● → Enter name → ●</p> <p>Deleting Folders Select folder → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Deleting feeds	<p>Start Here ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p>One Entry Select feed → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>All Entries ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Delete All → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>• Alternatively, perform Delete RSS Feed List in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings or Set Direct Browser) to delete all feeds.</p>

Sorting feeds	<p>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Sort → ● → Select option → ●</p>
Opening feed properties	<p>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → Details → ●</p>
Exchanging feeds with other devices	<p>Start Here ● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → See below</p> <p>Exporting All Feeds Export All → ● → Select storage media → ●</p> <p>Importing (Adding Feeds) Import → ● → Select file → ● → As New Items → ● → Yes or No → ●</p> <p>• If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.</p> <p>Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds) Import → ● → Select file → ● → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ● → Yes or No → ●</p> <p>• If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.</p>
Sending feeds via mail	<p>● → Yahoo! → ● → PC Site Browser → ● → RSS Feed → ● → Select feed → ☰ → Manage RSS Feed → ● → As Message → ● → Complete message → ʘ</p>



Security Settings

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser) ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** ➔ ●

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Manufacture Number ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ● • Not available for Direct Browser.
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Send Referer ➔ ● ➔ Not Send ➔ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Cookies ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Script Settings ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Selecting automatic Flash® file download option	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Flash® auto-download ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Disabling Flash® video download	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Download Videos ➔ ● ➔ Not Acquire ➔ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Root Certificates ➔ ● ➔ Select certificate ➔ ●

Changing validity of entered user ID/ password

- ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ●
 ➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Keep Auth Info** ➔ ●
 ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●
- **Per Browsing** retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. **On** retains such authentication information even after powering handset off.
 - Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Suppressing confirmation when entering/exiting secure pages

- ➔ **Yahoo!** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ●
 ➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Secure Prompt** ➔ ●
 ● ➔ **Do not Show** ➔ ●

Resetting

For PC Site Browser and Direct Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

PC Site Browser (or Direct Browser) ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings (or Set Direct Browser)** ➔ ●

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Initialized Browser ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● • For Direct Browser, Administrator Code is required to proceed.
Restoring default handset settings	● ➔ Yahoo! ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Reset Settings ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● • For Direct Browser, Administrator Code is required to proceed.



Connecting & Browsing

? What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations

? Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

? Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try *Tiny* font size.

? Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- Multi Job may be active. When switching between browsers, additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.

Bookmarks

? Cannot add Bookmarks

- <Add New Entry> is unselectable if storage limit is reached; delete titles.



Digital TV	7-2
Basics	7-2
Area Setup.....	7-3
Watching TV	7-4
Obtaining Program Information.....	7-7
Recording/Playing.....	7-8
Recording Programs.....	7-8
Playing Recorded Programs.....	7-9

TV Timer	7-10
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer.....	7-10
Time Shift	7-11
Time Shift Recording & Playback...	7-11
Additional Functions	7-12
Troubleshooting.....	7-18

7

Digital TV



Basics

945SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book, etc.

TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

Important Digital TV Usage Notes

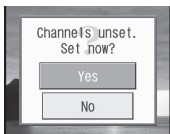
- 945SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programs may not be viewable or record properly when:
 - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
 - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
 - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
 - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
 - Near railroad tracks or highways
 - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable



Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:

1 



- Setup confirmation appears.

2 Yes 



3 Select region 


4 Select prefecture   
Select locality 



- After setup, channel list appears.

5 



- To watch TV, select **Digital TV** and press .

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In  **No Preference** 

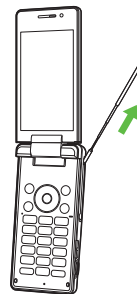
Adding Reception Areas

   **Set Channels**   
Change Area    **Select Area** 
  **Set Area Info**    **From** 

Digital TV Antenna

Pulling Antenna by its top, extend it fully.










- Adjust angle to find best reception. (Unless transmission source is near, extend it for better reception.)
- After use, gently retract Antenna. Do not carry handset with Antenna extended; damage may result.



7

Digital TV

Advanced

-   Switching reception Areas  Renaming Areas  Changing/disabling  function  Editing channels  Deleting all channels in Area  Adding new channels to Area  Updating all channels in the Area (P.7-12)



Watching TV


First, complete Area setup (P.7-3).

1 




TV Window

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Use  to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ TV ends


Incoming Calls

- Press  to answer calls.

When Answering Voice Calls with Memory Card Inserted

- Current program is temporarily recorded; start playback after the call. (Time Shift)

Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press  to access messages.

Watching TV in Widescreen

Viewer Position

1 In TV window, rotate Display to Viewer position

2 Hold handset in landscape



- TV window rotates with handset orientation.








3 Drag left or right across TV image ➔ Tap channel

- Alternatively, tap channel key then drag left or right to select channels.

Activating TV from Standby in Viewer Position

Tap MENU ➔ Tap TV ➔ Tap Digital TV

Advanced

-  Opening Help
-  Searching for current program on the Internet
-  Selecting an audiovisual mode
-  Changing panel pattern in portrait orientation
-  Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions (And more on P.7-12 - 7-13)
-  Changing subtitle settings
-  Changing sound settings (P.7-15)



Clamshell Open

First, in Motion Control menu, set Display Change to **Manual at Open(press \square)** or **Manual(press \square)**.

1 In TV window,







- TV window rotates 90 degrees clockwise.

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Multi Selector response changes with TV orientation.

Major TV Window Operations

Handset Keys

Toggle Panel On/Off	
Change Area	
Volume Control	
Toggle Display Size (portrait)	

Touch Panel

Switch Channel	Drag left or right across TV image ➔ Tap channel
Volume Control	Drag up or down across TV image
Toggle View	Tap TV image
Change Display Size	Pinch or spread across TV image ¹
Change Data Broadcast View	Pinch or spread across Data Broadcast area ¹
Change Area	Tap Area name ➔ Tap Area ²

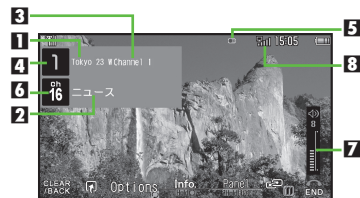
¹Available in portrait orientation.

²Available in landscape orientation.

Using Options Menu via Touch Panel

- Tap **Options**, then tap menu items to proceed.

Panel & Channel Area Descriptions





1 Area name	5 Sound Channel
2 Program name	6 Channel
3 Station name	7 Volume
4 Channel key	8 Signal strength ¹

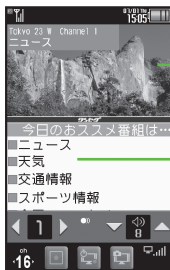
¹The more bars the better.

Indicator position varies with display size.



Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait orientation, Data Broadcast appears below TV image. Use  to select an item and press  to access program-related information and interactive services.



TV Image

Data Broadcast

Data Broadcast Window

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

Still Image Capture

Capture screenshots while watching TV.

- May be unavailable if TV was activated by TV Timer, etc.
- Saved images cannot be forwarded, edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to messages.


1 In TV window, 

2 

- Image is saved.

In Viewer Position



Tap *Options* ➔ Tap *Useful* ➔ Tap *Capture* ➔ Tap *Assign*

- In portrait orientation, tap , then tap *Assign*.

Opening Saved Images

- While Watching TV



[TV Window]  ➔ *Useful Func.* ➔

 ➔ *TV-Image Folder* ➔  ➔






Select image ➔ 

- From Standby

 ➔ *TV* ➔  ➔ *TV-Image Folder*

➔  ➔ Select image ➔ 

Advanced

-  Changing view
-  Returning to initial window
-  Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts
-  Suppressing Network connection confirmation
-  Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information (And more on P.7-14)

Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

TV Listing	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
Program Info	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 In TV window, (Y) (Long)

- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

In Viewer Position

Long Touch **Hold EPG**

Program Info

1 In TV window, (M) ➡ OperateProgram ➡ (C)

2 Program Info. ➡ (C)



Program Info Window

3 Select program ➡ (C)

- To return to TV window, press (CLEAR BACK) twice.

Setting Recording Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➡ (Y)

- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Setting TV Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➡ (M) ➡ Watching ➡ (C)



Recording Programs

Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).

Precautions

- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 945SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

Dubbing 10

- 945SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recordings to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties for remaining copy count.

1 In TV window, (Long) ➔ Recording starts



Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.
- When Small Lights flash yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: Small Lights illuminate green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.

2 (Long) ➔ Recording ends

Recording Programs in Landscape

[TV Window] (Long)

- To stop, Long Press (Long)

In Viewer Position

- Tap (Long) to start recording. To stop, tap (Long).
- In landscape orientation, Long Touch (Long) (To stop, Long Touch (Long)).

Chase Play (Playing while Recording)

- Watch a program from the beginning while recording it on Memory Card.

[Recording Window] (Long) ➔

Playback starts ➔ (Long) ➔

Playback stops

- To start playback in Viewer position, tap **Options** ➔ **Rec/Play** ➔ **Play**. Long Touch (Long) to stop playback.

Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)
- Saving Files via the Internet while Recording**
- While recording programs to handset, be sure there is enough free memory before saving files.

Advanced

- Recording programs without Data Broadcasts
- Saving Data Broadcast images to handset
- Recording programs to handset (P.7-15)



Playing Recorded Programs

- 1 In TV window, ➔ TV Player ➔



Video List

- indicates the file is unplayable.

- 2 Select file ➔



Playback Window

- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

- 3 (Long) ➔ Playback stops

Switching Video Lists

After , ➔ Change to Phone or Change to MemoryCard ➔

Major Playback Operations

Adjust volume or change display size following the same operations used while watching TV.

Handset Keys

Rewind/Fast Forward	1, 2 / 1
Skip (Forward/Backward)	/
Pause ³	(● in landscape)
Marker	⁴
Toggle Panel On/Off	(in landscape)

¹Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press (● in landscape).

²Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)

³In pause, use to reverse/advance frame.

⁴Not available during Time Shift playback. Long Press to split file.

Touch Panel

Rewind	Drag left across TV image ¹
Fast Forward	Drag right across TV image ¹
Pause	Tap Pause or ²
Stop Playback	Long Touch Hold
Skip to Any Point	Drag slider
Toggle View	Tap TV image
Change Display Size	Pinch or spread across TV image ³
Change Data Broadcast View	Pinch or spread across Data Broadcast area ³

¹Release to resume normal playback.

²In pause, drag left/right across TV image to reverse/advance frame.

³Available in portrait orientation.

Advanced

- Splitting files by specifying a time point ● Playing files repeatedly ● Playing split files ● Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders
- Checking memory status ● Renaming files ● Deleting files ● Copying files to Memory Card ● Opening file properties ● Using Marker List (And more on P.7-15 - 7-16)



TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

- 1 In TV window, ➔ *Rec./TimeShift* ➔
- 2 *Reservation List* ➔ ➔
- 3 *New Entry* ➔
- 4 *Manual* ➔ ➔ *Watching or Recording* ➔
- 5 Enter start date/time ➔
➔ Enter end date/time ➔
- 6 *Channel:* ➔ ➔ *Select channel* ➔ ➔

Setting Timer via EPG

In 4, *From TV Listing* ➔

- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception.

- End the current operations.
- Be sure battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory.

At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate.



Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function

- TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV may remain off, or the current function may end automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

Advanced

- Opening/editing/deleting Timer details ● Opening/playing/deleting Timer log records ● Customizing TV Alarm settings ● Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer (P.7-17)



Time Shift Recording & Playback

Record current program temporarily for delayed playback.

- Recorded content is deleted after playback.
- First, insert Memory Card.

1 While watching TV, (Long) ➔ Recording starts





Recording in progress

2 While recording, (Long) ➔ Playback starts

- Playback starts from where recording was started.
- Recording and playback stop when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.




Recording in Viewer Position


Tap **Options** ➔ Tap **Rec/** ➔ Tap **Rec**

- To start playback while recording, tap **Options** ➔ **Rec/** ➔ **Start**.
- In portrait orientation, tap .

Major Playback Operations

Handset Keys

Fast Forward	
Skip Forward	
Skip Backward	


*Press  to resume normal Time Shift playback.

Touch Panel

Fast Forward	Drag right across TV image*
--------------	-----------------------------

*Release to resume normal Time Shift playback.

Time Shift Recording Automatic Activation

When a Voice Call is answered while watching TV with Memory Card inserted, Time Shift recording starts automatically; Long Press  after the call for playback.

Advanced

-  Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation (P.7-15)



Area & Channel	
Switching reception Areas	While watching TV, ➔ Select Area ➔
Renaming Areas	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Change Area Name ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔
Changing/disabling function	<small>(Start Here)</small> While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Channel Key Setting ➔ ➔ See below
	Toggle All Receivable Channels By Manual ➔
	Disabling Disable ➔
Editing channels	<small>(Start Here)</small> While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ CH Switch ➔ ➔ Select channel ➔ ➔ See below
	Switching Channel Positions Flip ➔ ➔ Select target key ➔
	Deleting Channels Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Deleting all channels in Area	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Reset Settings ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Channel Update ➔ ➔ Update Further ➔
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Channel Update ➔ ➔ Update All ➔ ➔ Yes ➔

Watching	
Opening Help	While watching TV, ➔ Help ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching for current program on the Internet	While watching TV, ➔ Operate Program ➔ ➔ Program Info. Search ➔ ➔ Search ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
Enlarging image portion in landscape	With TV in landscape, Long Touch portion <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drag enlarged portion to enlarge other areas. To return, tap Display.
Enlarging display size for portrait orientation	With TV in portrait, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ Screen Size ➔ ➔ Enlarge ➔
Canceling image smoothing	While watching TV, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ Smooth Mode ➔ ➔ Off ➔
Saving current channel	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Save Channel ➔ ➔ Select key ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To overwrite a saved channel, choose Yes and press .
Selecting an audiovisual mode	While watching TV, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ AV Mode ➔ ➔ Select mode ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TV reception time may shorten depending on the mode.



Adjusting current AV Mode parameters	<p>Start Here While watching TV, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Change AV Mode (select mode other than Link to Genre) first.
	<p>Brightness Image ➔ ➔ Brightness ➔ ➔ Adjust level ➔ </p>
	<p>Disabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor Image ➔ ➔ Brightness ➔ ➔ ➔ </p>
	<p>Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene Image ➔ ➔ Control by Scene ➔ ➔ On(Light) or On ➔ </p>
	<p>Other Image-Related Parameters Image ➔ ➔ Select item ➔ ➔ Adjust level ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust Contrast, Blackness (black level), Color (color density), Tint (skin color tone) and Sharpness.
	<p>Restoring Default Image Settings Image ➔ ➔ Reset ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p>
Changing panel pattern in portrait orientation	<p>Selecting Sound Option Tone ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ </p>
	<p>With TV in portrait, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Panel Type ➔ ➔ Select pattern ➔ </p>
Setting indicators to always appear in landscape orientation	<p>With TV in landscape, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Display Icon ➔ ➔ On ➔ </p>

Switching One Seg services	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Select Serv. Station ➔ ➔ Select service ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for programs with multiple services.
Listening to audio from Speaker	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Sound Output ➔ ➔ Loudspeaker ➔ </p>
Switching audio output to wireless device	<p> ➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Sound Output ➔ ➔ Bluetooth Device ➔ </p>
Using wireless Headphones	<p>While watching TV, (Long)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Auto Exit ➔ ➔ Auto Exit Time ➔ ➔ Select time ➔ </p>
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Auto Exit ➔ ➔ Close Action ➔ ➔ Watch TV ➔ </p>
Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions	<p>Start Here ➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Showing Alarm Notice Alarm ➔ ➔ Alarm Notice ➔ </p>
	<p>Showing Voice Calls, Etc. Select item ➔ ➔ Notice a Call ➔ </p>
	<p>Showing New Message Window Incoming Message ➔ ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ </p>



Data Broadcast

Changing view	With Data Broadcast in portrait, ➔ <i>SetBroadcastData</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Change View (Data)</i> ➔ • To return to TV window, press .
Returning to initial window	With Data Broadcast in portrait, ➔ <i>SetBroadcastData</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Back to Top</i> ➔
Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts	While watching TV, ➔ <i>SetBroadcastData</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Delete StationData</i> ➔ ➔ See below Deleting by Station Select station ➔ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ Deleting All ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔
Suppressing Network connection confirmation	While watching TV, ➔ <i>SetBroadcastData</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Notify Connection</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔
Sending/hiding Location Information	While watching TV, ➔ <i>SetBroadcastData</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Location</i> ➔ ➔ See below Sending Always <i>On</i> ➔ Hiding Always <i>Off</i> ➔
Hiding manufacture number and other information	While watching TV, ➔ <i>SetBroadcastData</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Manufacture Number</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔

TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information	While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source ➔ • Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.
Using TV links	➔ ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ ➔ <i>TV Link</i> ➔ ➔ See below Opening TV Links Select link ➔ • Connection fees may apply. Opening Properties Select link ➔ ➔ <i>Details</i> ➔
Deleting TV links	➔ ➔ <i>TV</i> ➔ ➔ <i>TV Link</i> ➔ ➔ See below One Entry Select link ➔ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ All Entries ➔ <i>Delete All</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔



Subtitle & Sound

Changing subtitle settings	<p>[Start Here] While watching TV, ➔ Subtitle/Sound ➔ ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, etc.).
	<p>Showing Subtitles Always</p> <p>Display Subtitle ➔ ➔ On ➔ </p>
	<p>Hiding Subtitles Always</p> <p>Display Subtitle ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p>Changing Subtitle Language</p> <p>Subtitle Language ➔ ➔ Language 2 ➔ </p>
	<p>Showing Subtitle Area Always</p> <p>Auto Subtitle Off ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p>Showing Subtitles at the Top</p> <p>Subtitle Position ➔ ➔ Upper ➔ </p>
	<p>Increasing Subtitle Lines</p> <p>Subtitle ScrollMode ➔ ➔ On ➔ </p>
Changing sound settings	<p>[Start Here] While watching TV, ➔ Subtitle/Sound ➔ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Selecting Sound Option</p> <p>Sound Type ➔ ➔ Sound2 ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when multiple sounds are supported.
	<p>Listening to Sub Language</p> <p>Sound Channel ➔ ➔ Sub ➔ </p>
	<p>Listening to Main & Sub Languages</p> <p>Sound Channel ➔ ➔ Main + Sub ➔ </p>

Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	While watching TV, ➔ SetBroadcastData ➔ ➔ Set Recording ➔ ➔ Image Only ➔
Saving Data Broadcast images to handset	While watching TV, ➔ SetBroadcastData ➔ ➔ Image Location ➔ ➔ Phone Memory ➔
Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation	➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Set Call Time Shift ➔ ➔ Off ➔
Recording programs to handset	➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Save ➔ ➔ Phone Memory ➔

Recorded Programs

■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback, ➔ Split File ➔ ➔ Select Point ➔ ➔ Specify point ➔ ➔ Confirm ➔
Playing files repeatedly	➔ TV ➔ ➔ TV Player ➔ ➔ Repeat ➔
Playing split files	➔ TV ➔ ➔ TV Player ➔ ➔ Select split file ➔ ➔ Select file ➔



Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ Recorder Contents ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, press (8) to switch sound channels [L (Main), R (Sub) or L + R (Main + Sub)]. (Available for programs supporting sub language.) For more operations, see P.9-6 "Video Playback Operations." In Recorder Contents file list, press (⏮) to rename files, change playback mode (repeat, random, etc.), check memory status, open properties or delete files.
---	---

Managing

Selecting multiple files	<p>Start Here ● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ (Y)</p> <p>➔ See below</p> <p>Selecting</p> <p>Select file ➔ ● (☑)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To uncheck, press ● again.
	<p>Selecting/Unchecking All</p> <p>(⏮) ➔ Check All or Uncheck All ➔ ●</p>
Checking memory status	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ (⏮) ➔ Memory Remaining ➔ ●</p>
Renaming files	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ (⏮) ➔ Rename ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●</p>
Deleting files	<p>Start Here ● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Single Files</p> <p>Select file ➔ (⏮) ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>
	<p>All Files</p> <p>(⏮) ➔ Delete All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>

Copying files to Memory Card	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ (⏮) ➔ Change to Phone ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ (⏮) ➔ Copy to Card ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for compatible files.
Moving files to Memory Card	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ (⏮) ➔ Change to Phone ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ (⏮) ➔ Move to Card ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Files moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset.
Sorting files	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ (⏮) ➔ Sort ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●</p>
Opening file properties	<p>● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Player ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ (⏮) ➔ Details ➔ ●</p>

Markers

Playing files with Markers	<p>Start Here During playback ➔ See below</p> <p>Skipping between Markers</p> <p>(⏮) (Long) or (⏭) (Long)</p> <p>Moving to Specific Markers</p> <p>(0) - (9)</p>
	<p>Start Here During playback, (⏮) ➔ Set Marker ➔ ● ➔ Marker List ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Starting Playback</p> <p>Select number ➔ ●</p> <p>Deleting a Marker</p> <p>Select number ➔ (⏮) ➔ Delete ➔ ●</p> <p>Deleting All Markers</p> <p>(⏮) ➔ Delete All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>



TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

Opening/editing/ deleting Timer details	<p>Start Here While watching TV, Rec./TimeShift Reservation List See below</p> <p>Opening Entries Select entry </p> <p>Editing Entries Select entry Edit Edit </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some entries may not be edited depending on the content. <p>Deleting Entries Select entry Delete Yes </p>
	<p>Start Here While watching TV, Rec./TimeShift Reservation List See below</p> <p>Opening Timer Log Select record </p> <p>Playing Recorded Programs Select record </p> <p>Deleting Records Select record Yes </p>

Customizing TV
Alarm settings

Start Here While watching TV, **Rec./TimeShift**
Reservation List **TV**
Alarm **See below**

Changing TV Alarm Time

Alarm Time **Select time**

Disabling Tone/Vibration

Alarm or Vibration **Off**

Changing Illumination Pattern

Effect Illumination **Pattern/Color**

Select pattern **Select color**

• Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Key Illumination Pattern

Effect Illumination **Key Pattern**

Select pattern

Disabling Illumination

Effect Illumination **Switch On/Off**

Off

Changing Duration

Duration **Select time**

Prioritizing current
operation over TV
Timer/TV
Recording Timer

TV **Settings** **TV Reserve**
Prior **Off**



Watching

? TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

? Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform **Update All** in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

? Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta[®] file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

? Could not start recording. appeared as recording result

- Recording failed due to low battery/memory, active function, etc.

? Recording aborted. appeared as recording result

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.



Camera	8-2
Getting Started	8-2
Photo Camera & Video Camera	
Overview	8-3
Photo Camera	8-6
Capturing Still Images	8-6
Selecting Camera by Use	8-9
Changing & Saving Camera Settings ...	8-12
Registering Faces (Detect Personal)...	8-15
Video Camera	8-17
Recording Video	8-17
Checking Golf Swing	8-20
Changing & Saving Video Camera	
Settings	8-21

Opening Files	8-24
Opening Saved Images via Album ...	8-24
Opening Saved Files via Review ...	8-27
Editing Images	8-28
Picture Editor	8-28
Composite	8-32
Editing Video	8-33
DPOF	8-34
Printing Images	8-34
Additional Functions	8-35
Troubleshooting	8-42

8

Camera & Imaging



Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Detect Personal

Register faces; related information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection.

Continuous AF

Focus continuously adjusts as the framed subject's position changes.

Select Camera

945SH is loaded with preset camera modes tailored for various purposes/occasions; select a camera mode to suit subject/shooting conditions.

Album

Sort saved images into up to 500 albums; create original albums as needed.

Important Mobile Camera Usage Notes

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with soft dry cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click

- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

Advanced




 ● Changing function assigned to   ● Opening Help (P.8-35)



Photo Camera & Video Camera Overview

Focus modes and sizes shown below are defaults; those with * are fixed.

		Description	Focus Mode	Size
Standard Shooting	Easy Auto Camera	Capture nearby subjects easily (settings partially changeable)	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Pro Auto Camera	Capture nearby subjects easily (settings mostly changeable)	Normal(Portrait)	12M
	Quick Camera	Capture distant scenery quickly	Manual Focus*	3M
Subject & Conditions	Scene Cameras	Select one according to subject/shooting conditions	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Monochrome Camera	Capture black and white images	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Sepia Camera	Capture sepia images	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Long Exposure Camera	Capture images in low light (fireworks, night scenes, etc.)	Normal(Portrait)*	12M
	Shot Memo Camera	Improve text readability in captured memos, tables, etc.	Center Auto Focus*	5M
Specific Objectives	Wallpaper Camera	Show mock Clock/Calendar in Viewfinder to capture image and set it as Wallpaper	Normal(Portrait)	Wallpaper*
	Auction Camera	Use guide to capture multiple images for posting on auction sites	Center Auto Focus	VGA
	Messaging Camera	Capture and send images via mail easily	Normal(Portrait)*	VGA
	Blog Camera	Capture and post images to blogs easily	Normal(Portrait)	VGA



Auto Shutter Release

Look Back Camera

Play whistle sound and release shutter automatically when subject turns face to camera

Normal(Portrait)*

12M

Smile Camera

Release shutter automatically when subject smiles

Normal(Portrait)*

12M

Self Timer Camera

Release shutter automatically after selected time elapses

Normal(Portrait)*

12M

Consecutive Shooting

Rapid Shooting Camera

Capture up to 100 images rapidly

Center Auto Focus

QVGA

Three-Shot Camera

Capture three consecutive images of up to 12M size automatically

Normal(Portrait)

12M

Best Select Photo

Select best image from a series of rapid shot images including moments immediately before shutter releases

Center Auto Focus

QVGA

Special Shooting

Panorama Camera

Capture panoramic images of scenery, etc.

Center Auto Focus

—

Scanner Camera

Move handset to scan the area to capture

Center Auto Focus

Free

Self Portrait Camera

Use guide to capture self portraits

Normal(Portrait)*

5M



Additional
Cameras

Drawable Camera

Drag on captured image to scribble or sketch

Normal(Portrait)*

Wallpaper

Pretty Arrange Camera

Touch up faces in captured images

Normal(Portrait)*

5M

Face Register Camera

Register name and note for faces

Normal(Portrait)*

VGA*

HD Video Camera

Record long high quality video

Normal(Portrait)

HD*

Video Camera for Mail

Record short video easily to send it via mail

Normal(Portrait)

QCIF

Pro Auto Video Camera

Record video with more customizable options

Normal(Portrait)

HD

Golf Swing Video Camera

Record and check golf swing

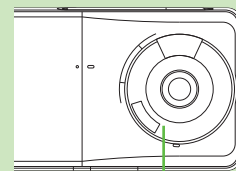
—

Wide*

Video Camera

Camera-in-Use Light

- LED beside the lens flashes red while mobile camera is active. LED illuminates red while recording video.



Camera-in-Use Light



Capturing Still Images

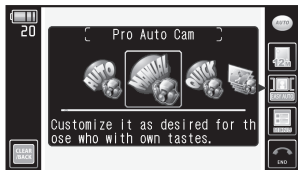
Viewer Position

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)
Follow these steps to capture someone's image via **Pro Auto Camera**:

1 Rotate Display to Viewer position

- When rotating Display to Viewer position for the first time, Viewer Position menu opens; tap **Take Picture** to complete setup.

2 Tap ➔ Swipe to select Pro Auto Cam



3 Tap Pro Auto Camera

- Pro Auto Camera activates.

4 Frame subject on Display

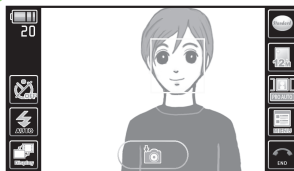


Photo Viewfinder
(face detected)

- Focus is locked on faces automatically for Pro Auto Camera, Easy Auto Camera, etc. (Portrait auto focus)
 - When multiple faces are detected, frame appears on each face; tap one on which to lock focus.
 - Detection may fail depending on face angle, distance from subject or environment.
- Register name, note, etc. for faces; entered information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection, and captured images are sorted into albums (Portrait) when saved. (Detect Personal)

5



Captured Image Window

- Shutter clicks; captured image appears.



6 Tap

- Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Open saved images via Album, Review or Data Folder.

7 Tap **END** ➔ Camera shuts down


Mobile Light

- Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level or camera mode. Follow these steps to turn setting off:

[Photo Viewfinder] Tap  ➔ Tap  twice

- May require access via **MENU** depending on camera mode.

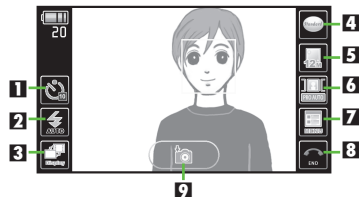
Advanced

-  ● Selecting Self-timer time/repeat interval ● Changing image size ● Changing focus frame design ● Changing shutter click sound ● Changing save location ● Changing Mobile Light mode (And more on **P.8-35 - 8-36**)



Pre-Image Capture Operations (Touch Panel)

Indicators appear on Display. Tap one to adjust the corresponding setting or execute the assigned command.
Indicators vary by camera mode.



1	Self-timer	6	Switch cameras
2	Mobile Light	7	MENU
3	Toggle indicator view	8	Exit
4	Scene	9	Release shutter
5	Picture Size		

Toggling Indicator View
[Photo Viewfinder] Tap **Display**

Additional Operations

Shortcuts:

Zoom In/Out	Drag up or down across image
Adjust Brightness	Drag left or right across image
Focus Lock	Tap image

Tap **MENU** for more functions/settings.

Opening Help

[Photo Viewfinder] Tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Help** twice

Clamshell Open

(Portrait Display Handset Key Operations)
Follow these steps to capture someone's image via **Quick Camera**:

- 1
 - Photo Viewfinder appears.
- 2 ➔ **Switch Camera** ➔ ➔ **Quick Cam** ➔

3 Frame subject on Display

- Faces are not detected automatically for Quick Camera. For close-up portrait shots, press and use to adjust focus. (Manual Focus)

4

- Shutter clicks; captured image is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Open saved images via Album, Review or Data Folder.

5

➔ **Camera shuts down**

Mobile Light

- Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level or camera mode. Follow these steps to turn setting off:

[Photo Viewfinder] ➔ **Mobile Light** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔

Advanced

• Correcting portrait auto focus images (And more on **P.8-37**)



Pre-Image Capture Operations (Handset Keys)

Zoom In/Out	
Adjust Brightness	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Toggle Indicator View	
Open Help	

Press to open Options menu for more functions/settings.

Focus Lock

Lock focus on subject; camera continuously focuses on the subject even if it moves.

- Chase Focus tracks the subject's movement, and Continuous AF adjusts focus as the distance to the subject changes.
- May be unavailable depending on camera mode.

1 In Photo Viewfinder, frame subject in center of Display

2 Half press or tap subject

- Focus Lock is set.

3

- Captured image appears.
- Tap or **OK** to return to Viewfinder.

Using Handset Keys

[Photo Viewfinder] Frame subject in center of Display ➔ ➔

Canceling Focus Lock

- Release or press .

Chase Focus

- Camera distinguishes the subject by color; light-colored subjects or subjects having the same color as the background may not be tracked correctly.

Image Size & Usage

945SH Picture Size & Corresponding Usage:

12M	A3 prints
8M	A4 prints
5M	B5 prints
3M	L to 2L prints
Full HD	Full HD display wallpaper
Wallpaper	945SH Wallpaper
VGA	Blog posts, etc.
QVGA	Mail attachments, etc.

For image specifications, see **P.17-21** "Photo Camera."

Smart Resize Zoom

- At **12M(Smart Resize)**, Picture Size changes with zoom scale (print quality may be affected); check the size on indicator before image capture.

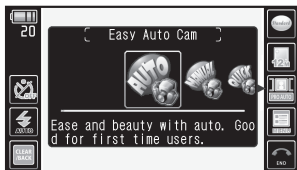


Selecting Camera by Use

Switching Cameras

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap camera selection indicator (📷, etc.)



- Alternatively, in Main Menu, **Camera** ➔ **Various Cameras** to select camera.

- 2 Swipe to select camera


- 3 Tap camera

- Selected camera activates.
- For subsequent operations, see "Using Selected Camera."

Using Selected Camera

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)

■ Rapid Shooting Camera

- 1 Tap 📷
- 2 Tap mode twice
- 3 Frame subject on Display ➔ 
 - After image capture, thumbnails appear.
- 4 Tap **Options** ➔ Tap **Check All**
- 5 Tap **Save**
 - All captured images are saved.
 - Save process may take some time depending on the number of captured images.

Saving Selected Images

After 📷, tap image (👉) ➔ Tap **Save**
Creating Strobe Photo (Composite Image)

After 📷, tap 📷 ➔ Tap **Yes** ➔ Tap **OK**

- Tap 📷 to save.
- May be unavailable depending on the number of captured images.

■ Look Back Camera

- 1 Frame subject on Display ➔ Tap 📷 or 📷
 - Whistle sound plays.
- 2 Face detection activates and shutter releases; image appears
- 3 Tap **OK**
 - Viewfinder returns.

Advanced

- 👉 ● Changing continuous shooting mode ● Combining successive images ● Changing Look Back Camera sound (P.8-36)



■ Smile Camera

- 1 Frame subject on Display
- 2 Smile detection activates and shutter releases; image appears

3 Tap **OK**

- Viewfinder returns.

■ Self Timer Camera

1 Frame subject on Display



- Countdown starts.

2 Shutter releases after approximately ten seconds; image appears

3 Tap **OK**

- Viewfinder returns.

■ Wallpaper Camera

1 Frame subject on Display



- Wallpaper preview appears.

2 Tap **Setting**

- Image is set as Wallpaper. (Viewfinder returns.)

■ Auction Camera

1 Frame subject on Display



- First preview image appears.

2 Tap

- Repeat 1 - 2 to capture two more images following onscreen instructions.

3 Tap **Yes**

■ Messaging Camera

1 Frame subject on Display



2 Tap

- Mail Composition window opens. Complete and send message.

■ Shot Memo Camera

1 Frame subject on Display

2 Tap ➔ **Correction starts**
➔ **Swipe to select preview image** ➔ **Tap Apply**

3 Tap

- Viewfinder returns.

■ Pretty Arrange Camera

1 Frame subject on Display



2 Tap

- Face is touched up.
- To cancel, tap .

3 Tap **Apply** ➔ Tap

- Viewfinder returns.

Adjusting Each Effect Separately
After 2, tap corresponding indicator (, etc.)

- Tap the same indicator repeatedly for further adjustment.

When Multiple Faces are Detected

- After 2, tap to touch up all faces. To touch up select faces, follow these steps:

Tap frame () ➔ Tap ➔ 3

Editing Images

After 1, tap ➔ Tap effect

- For more, see P.8-28 "Picture Editor."

Advanced

- Selecting Self-timer time/repeat interval (P.8-35)
- Adjusting smile detection level • Changing Clock/Calendar type for Wallpaper Camera (P.8-36 - 8-37)



■ Panorama Camera

- 1 **Frame subject on Display**
➡
- 2 **Move handset slowly to keep + aligned with either of yellow lines**
- 3
 - Captured image is saved.
 - Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

■ Self Portrait Camera

Activate Self Portrait Camera with handset open and follow these steps:

- 1 **Turn handset upside down**
- 2 **Rotate Display 180 degrees ➡ Tap OK**
- 3 **Frame your face on Display and look into the lens**
- 4 **Face detection activates, tones sound, and shutter releases; image appears**
- 5
 - Viewfinder returns.



■ Additional Cameras

Three-Shot Camera	Frame subject on Display ➡ ➡ Tap image ➡ Tap Save • To save all images, see - in "Rapid Shooting Camera" on P.8-9.
Best Select Photo	
Scene Cameras	
Monochrome Camera	Frame subject on Display ➡
Sepia Camera	
Long Exposure Camera	Frame subject on Display ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shutter is left open for approximately 30 seconds before image capture.
Blog Camera	Frame subject on Display ➡ ➡ Tap ➡ Proceed with blogging
Drawable Camera	Frame subject on Display ➡ ➡ Tap ➡ Drag on image ➡ Tap Assign
Scanner Camera	Frame subject on Display ➡ ➡ Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture ➡

Advanced

- Changing panorama/scanner settings ● Previewing panorama image ● Changing panorama image preview method ● Changing exposure time for Long Exposure Camera (P.8-37)



Changing & Saving Camera Settings


Change settings by purpose/shooting conditions; save frequently used settings as **My Camera** for future use.

- Some settings may be unavailable depending on camera mode (no corresponding indicators appear).
- For setting procedures, see **P.8-35 - 8-36**. In addition to these, there are settings unique to each tailored camera.

Major Items

		Description
<div>8</div> <div>Camera & Imaging</div> <div>Focus</div>	Focus Mode	Select Normal(Portrait) , Center Auto Focus , Macro or Manual Focus
	Continuous AF	Adjust focus as focus-locked subject's position changes; choose On or Off
	Chase Focus	Track focus-locked subject as it moves within framed image; choose On or Off
	Focus Mark	Select focus frame design from Pattern 1 to Pattern 6
<div>Shutter</div>	Self-timer	Select 10 sec. , 5 sec. , 2 sec. or Off
	Shutter Mode	Select Normal (manual), Egao (smile detection) or Furimuki (face detection)
	Shutter Sound	Select shutter click sound from Pattern 1 to Pattern 3
<div>Image Size & Quality</div>	Picture Size	Select image size from 12M(3000x4000) to QVGA(240x320)
	Picture Quality	Select image quality from High Quality , Fine and Normal



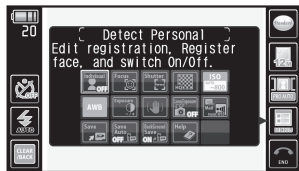
		Description
Conditions	ISO Sensitivity	Select light sensitivity from Auto (~800) to Auto(High:~12800) and 100 to 12800
	White Balance	Select Auto , Daylight , Cloud/Shade , Tungsten or Fluorescent for best color balance
	Exposure	Select amount of light received by camera from -2 to +2
	Mobile Light	Select Mobile Light mode from On , Automatic , Low Light and Off
Save Settings	Save Pictures to	Select Memory Card Priority , Memory Card Fixed , Phone Memory , DCIM or Ask Each Time
	Auto Save	Select On(Preview Off) , On(Preview 2 sec.) , On(Preview Manual) or Off
	Background Save	Enable quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images; choose On or Off
Other	Shake Reducing	Select shake reduction option from Auto , Auto(Strong) and Off
	Display Setting	Select indicator view from Normal , Guidance and Icon Off
	Set Send Key	Select send option assigned to 



Changing Settings

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)
Example: Picture Quality

1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap **MENU**



2 Tap **Picture Quality** twice



3 Tap quality twice

- Viewfinder returns.
- For some settings, current status appears in their indicators.

Saving Changed Settings

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)
After image capture, save changed settings with a name and captured image; load saved settings in the same manner as switching cameras.

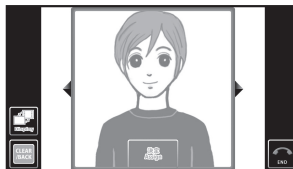
May be unavailable depending on camera mode.

Saving as My Camera

1 In captured image window, tap **Options** ➔ Tap **Save as My Camera**

- Messages appear.

2 Drag frame to specify image area



- The specified portion will be used as the camera's icon.

3 Tap **Assign**

4 Tap **My Camera Name:**

5 Enter name ➔ Tap **Done**

6 Tap **Assign**

- My Camera is created.

Entering Information

After **5**, tap **Note:** ➔ Enter text ➔ Tap **Done** ➔ **5**

Using My Cameras

1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap camera selection indicator (📷, etc.)

2 Swipe to select My Camera

3 Tap My Camera

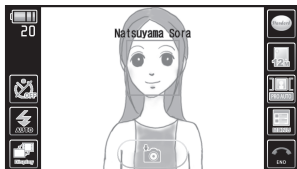
Advanced

- 👉 ● Deleting My Cameras ● Editing My Cameras (P.8-38)

Registering Faces (Detect Personal)

Register faces; related information appears in Viewfinder upon face detection, and captured images are sorted into albums (Portrait) when saved.

- Register name, note and priority for up to ten faces.
- When multiple registered faces are detected, focus is locked to one with highest priority.



Viewfinder Information

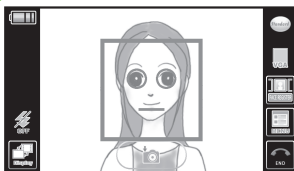
Saving Entries

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)

- 1 In Photo Viewfinder, tap **MENU**
- 2 Tap **Detect Personal**

3 Tap **Register Face**

4 Use guide to find best position



- Guide turns red when face is detected.

5



- Window shown above opens when face is recognized correctly; if not, repeat 4 - 5.

6 Tap **Empty**

7 Tap **Name:**

8 Enter name ➔ Tap **Done**

9 Tap **Assign**

- Entry is saved.
- The lower the entry number the higher the priority.

Entering Information

After 3, tap **Note:** ➔ Enter text ➔ Tap **Done** ➔ 9

Setting Text Color

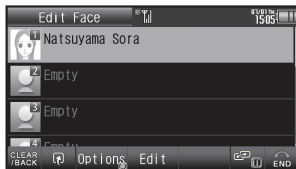
After 3, tap **Font Color:** ➔ Tap color ➔ 9

- Upon face detection, Viewfinder information appears in the selected color.



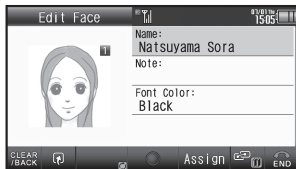
Editing Entries

- 1** In Photo Viewfinder, tap **MENU**
- 2** Tap *Detect Personal* ➔ Tap *Edit Face* twice



Edit Face Window

- 3** Select entry ➔ Tap **Edit**



- 4** Tap item ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving entries
- 5** Tap **Assign**
 - Entry is overwritten.

Deleting/Moving Entries

Follow these steps to delete an entry:

- 1** In Edit Face window, select entry
- 2** Tap **Options**
- 3** Tap **Delete** ➔ Tap **Yes**
 - Entry is deleted.

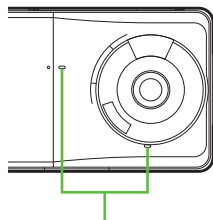
Moving Entries (Changing Priorities)
After **2**, tap *Change Priority* ➔ Tap target location



Recording Video

Precautions

Do not cover Recorder Microphones while recording video.



Recorder Microphones

Viewer Position

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)
Follow these steps to record high definition video via **HD Video Camera**.
Record up to four seconds per shot on handset.
Insert a Memory Card to record longer shots.

1 (Long)



Video Viewfinder
(HD Video Camera)

2 Frame subject on Display



- Recording starts after a tone.



- Recording stops with a tone.
- After video is saved, file plays and Viewfinder returns.
- Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.

Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. After the call, video is saved, file plays and Viewfinder returns.

If Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Switching Video Cameras

[Video Viewfinder] Tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Simple Setting** ➔ Tap video camera

Advanced

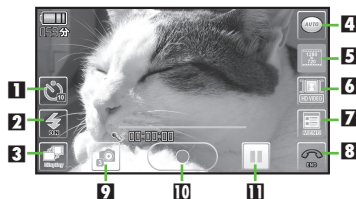
- Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots ● Changing image quality ● Activating Mobile Light ● Capturing images while recording video (still image capture) ● Changing Microphone mode (And more on **P.8-38 - 8-39**)



Video Viewfinder Operations (Touch Panel)

Indicators appear on Display. Tap one to adjust the corresponding setting or execute the assigned command.

Indicators vary by camera mode.



1 Self-timer	7 MENU
2 Mobile Light	8 Exit
3 Toggle indicator view	9 Capture still image
4 Scene	10 Start recording
5 Recording size	11 Pause/resume recording
6 Switch cameras	

Toggling Indicator View
[Video Viewfinder] Tap *Display*

Additional Operations

Zoom In/Out	Drag up or down across image
Adjust Brightness	Drag left or right across image
Focus Lock	Tap image
Cancel Recording (Start Over)	Tap CLEAR/BACK (in Viewer position only)

*May be unavailable depending on recording size.

Tap **MENU** for more functions/settings.

Changing Scene Setting by Subject

[Video Viewfinder] Tap ➔ Tap scene

Opening Help

[Video Viewfinder] Tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Help**

Switching Cameras

[Video Viewfinder] Tap camera selection indicator (, etc.) ➔ Swipe to select camera ➔ Tap camera



Clamshell Open

(Portrait Display Handset Key Operations)
Follow these steps to send recorded video
via mail using **Video Camera for Mail**:

- 1 ➔ **Camera** ➔
- 2 **Video Camera for Mail** ➔



Video Viewfinder
(Video Camera for Mail)

- 3 **Frame subject on Display**
➔
- Recording starts after a tone.
- 4
- Recording stops with a tone.
- After video is saved, file plays.

5 During playback,

6 **S! Mail** ➔

- Mail Composition window opens.

7 **Complete message** ➔

Switching Video Cameras

[Video Viewfinder] ➔ **Simple Setting** ➔ ➔ **Select video camera**
➔

Video Viewfinder Operations
(Handset Keys)

Zoom In/Out	
Adjust Brightness	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Change Quality	
Pause/Resume Recording	While Recording, *
Capture Still Image	While Recording,
Cancel Recording (Start Over)	
Open Help	

*May be unavailable depending on recording size.

Press to open Options menu for more functions/settings.



Checking Golf Swing

Play two golf swing video files simultaneously for comparison.

Be sure there is ample swinging space before recording golf swings.

Recording with Golf Swing Video Camera

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)

1 In Video Viewfinder, tap camera selection indicator (📷, etc.)

2 Swipe to select *GolfSwingVideoCam* and tap it

3 Frame head within green circle ➡ 📷

- Countdown starts.
- Recording starts after approximately ten seconds; video is saved automatically.

Self-Recording

- Activate Golf Swing Video Camera with handset open and rotate Display 180 degrees to record yourself. Viewfinder image appears reversed; to display a mirror image, follow these steps: Tap *Options* ➡ Tap *Settings* ➡ Tap *Display Setting* ➡ Tap *Mirror*

Comparing Golf Swings

(Portrait Display Handset Key Operations)
Play two video files recorded with Golf Swing Video Camera simultaneously in slow motion for comparison.

- Simultaneous playback may be unavailable for other video files.
- Golf Swing Play supports video recorded with Golf Swing Video Camera only.
- Simultaneous/synchronous playback may be unavailable depending on recording conditions (swing speed difference, background, etc.).

1 📶 ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ 📶 ➡ *Media Player* ➡ 📶

2 *Videos* ➡ 📶 ➡ *Golf Swing Play* ➡ 📶

3 Select storage media ➡ 📶

4 Select first file ➡ 📶 (□/☑)

5 Select second file ➡ 📶 (□/☑)

6 📶

- To suppress message, press 📶.

7 📶 ➡ 📶

- Synchronizing process starts.

8 📶

- Slow motion playback starts.

Adjusting Head Position

In 📶, 📶 ➡ 📶 (Chg. Up) or 📶 (Chg.Low) ➡ 📶 Move circle to frame head ➡ 📶 ➡ 📶 ➡ 📶

Setting Swing Direction & Point of View

In 📶, 📶 ➡ 📶 (Chg. Up) or 📶 (Chg.Low) ➡ 📶 (Prev.) or 📶 (Next) ➡ 📶 ➡ 📶 ➡ 📶

Pausing Playback

- In pause, press 📶 to advance frame or Long Press 📶 for super slow motion playback (release for pause).

Replaying during Playback

📶

Playing at Normal Speed

In 📶, 📶 (Long)



Changing & Saving Video Camera Settings

Change settings by purpose/shooting conditions; save frequently used settings as My Video Camera for future use.

- Some settings may be unavailable depending on camera mode (no corresponding indicators appear).
- For setting procedures, see **P.8-38 - 8-39**.

Major Items

		Description
Focus	Focus Mode	Select Normal(Portrait) , Manual Focus or Macro
	Chase Focus	Track focus-locked subject as it moves within framed image; choose On or Off
Video Size & Quality	Picture Size	Select recording size from HD(1280x720) to QCIF(176x144)
	Video Quality	Select High Quality , Fine or Normal
Microphone	Microphone	Record video with sound; choose On or Off
	Microphone Mode	Select Wide , Focus or Chase



Conditions

Exposure

Select amount of light received by camera from **-2** to **+2**

Mobile Light

Activate Mobile Light; choose **On** or **Off**

ND Filter Setting

Select **Auto** or **Fixed**

Save Settings

Save Videos to

Select **Memory Card Priority**, **Memory Card Fixed**, **Phone Memory** or **Ask Each Time**

Auto Save

Select **On(Preview Off)**, **On(Preview On)** or **Off**

Other

Shake Reducing

Enable shake reduction; choose **On** or **Off**

Display Setting

Select indicator/Viewfinder view from **Normal**, **Guidance**, **Icon Off** and **Mirror**

Self-timer

Select **10 sec.**, **5 sec.**, **2 sec.** or **Off**

Video/Audio Encode

Select **H.264/ACC** or **MPEG4/AMR**

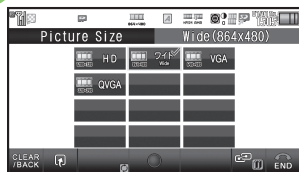
Changing Settings

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)
Example: Picture Size (recording size)

1 In Video Viewfinder, tap **MENU**



2 Tap **Picture Size**



3 Tap **size**

- Viewfinder returns.
- For some settings, current status appears in their indicators.

Saving Changed Settings

(Landscape Display Touch Panel Operations)
Save changed settings as My Video Camera and load them as needed.
Change settings beforehand.

Saving as My Video Camera

1 In Video Viewfinder, tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Simple Setting**

2 Tap **Save as My Video1** or **Save as My Video2**

- Settings are saved as My Video Camera.

Overwriting Saved My Video Camera
After 2, tap Yes

Using My Video Cameras

1 In Video Viewfinder, tap **MENU** ➔ Tap **Simple Setting**

2 Tap My Video Camera





Opening Saved Images via Album

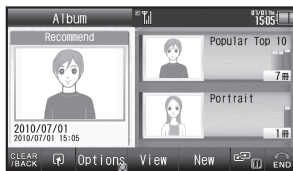
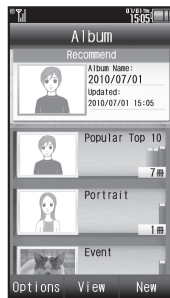
Basics

Handset sorts saved images (still images and video) into up to 500 albums of the following preloaded categories automatically; create original albums as needed.

Portrait	Stores portraits sorted into albums by face registered via Detect Personal
Event	Stores images sorted into albums by period scheduled in Calendar
By Camera	Stores images sorted into albums by camera mode
By Date	Stores images sorted into albums by captured date

Album Images & Source Files

- Album stores only file locations. (Source files are saved in Data Folder.) Images disappear from Album if source files are deleted.



A single image can be sorted into multiple categories (e.g., a portrait captured using a specific camera is stored in **By Camera** and **Portrait**). In addition, a single image with multiple registered faces will be stored in each subject's album in **Portrait**.

Opening Albums

(Portrait Display Handset Key Operations)

- 1 ➔ **Camera** ➔ ➔ **Album** ➔



Album Window

- **Recommend** shows a recently updated album.
- **Popular Top 10** stores ten most frequently opened albums.

- 2 **Select category** ➔



Album List

- Albums within appear.

3 Select album ➡



Image List

4 Select image

5

- Image appears.

Opening Latest Album

After 1,

Slide Show (Still Images)

After 2, select album ➡ ➡ *Slide Show* ➡

Copying/Moving Images to Other Albums

After 4, ➡ *Copy to Album (or Move to Album)* ➡ ➡ *Select category* ➡ ➡ *Select album* ➡

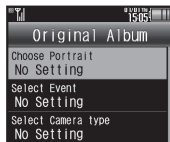
- Images in By Date or By Camera albums cannot be moved.

Creating Original Albums

Create new albums by selecting sort keys (from Portrait, Event and By Camera) and specifying date and time.

Follow these steps to create an album by selecting sort keys from Portrait and By Camera:

1 In Album window, ➡ *Create Original Album* ➡



2 Choose Portrait ➡

3 Select entry ➡

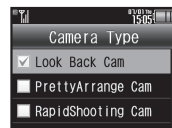


- Repeat to complete selection.

4

5 Select Camera type ➡

6 Select camera ➡



- Repeat 5 to complete selection.

7

8 Create Album ➡

9 Enter name ➡

10 Yes ➡

Previewing Created Album

After 7, *Album Preview* ➡

- To return, press .

Editing Sort Keys

[Album List] Select album ➡ ➡ *Edit Auto Sort Keys* ➡ ➡ *Select item* ➡ ➡ *Edit* ➡

- For items other than *Select Date/Time*, press again.



Editing Albums

Some albums may not be edited.

Renaming Albums

1 In album list, select album



2 Change Album Name ➔ ●

3 Enter name ➔ ●

Adding Images

Not available for By Date or By Camera albums.

1 In album list, select album



2 Add Picture ➔ ●



3 Select folder ➔ ●

- For *DCIM Folder*, select a folder and press ●.

4 Select image ➔ ●

Adding Images via Data Folder

- ➔ *Data Folder* ➔ ● ➔ *Pictures, DCIM or Videos* ➔ ● ➔ *Select image* ➔ ● ➔ *Save to Album* ➔ ● ➔ *Select category* ➔ ● ➔ *Select album* ➔ ●
- For *DCIM*, select a folder and press ●.

Deleting Albums

1 In album list, select album



2 Delete ➔ ●

3 Yes ➔ ●

Adding Comments to Images

1 In image list, select image



2 Edit Comment ➔ ●

3 Enter text ➔ ●



- Entered text appears in image list.

Other Editing Options

- Album image handling is similar to that of Data Folder. For more information, see the chapter "Data Folder & Memory Card."

Advanced

- Changing album covers
- Sorting albums
- Unlocking Secret Data Folder temporarily
- Opening album properties
- Removing images from albums
- Deleting images (P.8-39)



Opening Saved Files via Review

Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file;
access older files as needed.

- 1 ➔ **Camera** ➔
- 2 **Review** ➔



Review Window

- To end Review, press .

Enlarging Images

After ,

Pausing/Resuming Video

After , (press to pause/resume)

Opening Help

[Review Window]

Accessing Older Files

- 1 In Review window,



Review File List

- File list appears.
- Press to toggle lists.

- 2 **Select file** ➔
- File opens/plays.



Picture Editor

Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
Mosaic	Apply mosaic effect to images
Paint Pen	Scribble or sketch
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

Basic Operation

- 1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔
- 2 **Pictures** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔
- 3 ➔ **Edit** ➔
- 4 **Picture Editor** ➔



Picture Editor Menu

- 5 **Select effect** ➔ ➔ **Edit**

• To start over, press .

- 6 **When finished**,

- 7 **Save as New** ➔

• To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit .)

- 8 **Enter name** ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

Canceling Effects

After , **Undo** ➔

■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .

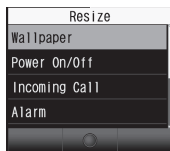


Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

Resize to Preset Size

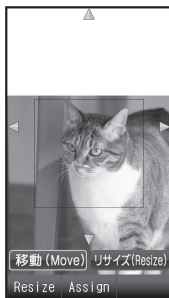
- 1 In Picture Editor menu, **Resize** ➡ ●



Resize Window

- 2 Select size ➡ ●

- 3 ● Specify image area



- If crop frame does not appear, omit ③.

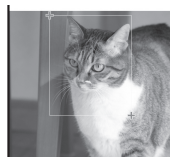
- 4 ●
- Editing is complete.

Zooming In/Out

After ③, ● ➡ ● ➡ ④

Cropping Images

- 1 In Resize window, **Cut** ➡ ●
- 2 ● Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➡ ●



- 3 ● Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➡ ●

- 4 ●
- Editing is complete.

Specifying Image Area

After ③, ● ➡ ④

Zooming In/Out

After ③, ● ➡ ● ➡ ④

Advanced

- Using additional editing options (P.8-40)



Scribbling

Drag to scribble or sketch.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Paint Pen* ➔ ●

- 2 Drag freely on image



- 3 ●
• Editing is complete.

Changing Line Thickness & Color

- In ②, [P] ➔ Select thickness ➔ ● ➔ [C] ➔ Select color ➔ ● ➔ [Y]

Using Pictograms

- In ②, [P] ➔ [P] ➔ Select size ➔ ● ➔ Select Pictogram ➔ ● ➔ [Y]

Canceling Last Action

- Press [Undo].

Zooming In

- In ②, [Y]

Viewing Portions Outside Display

- In ②, drag arrows at the corners

Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Retouch* ➔ ●

- 2 Select effect ➔ ●

- 3 ●
• Editing is complete.

Adding Frames

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Frame* ➔ ●

- 2 Select frame ➔ ●

- 3 ●
• Editing is complete.

Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Face Arrange* ➔ ●



Face Arrange Menu

- 2 Select type ➔ ●

- 3 ●
• Editing is complete.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.



Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1 In Face Arrange menu,

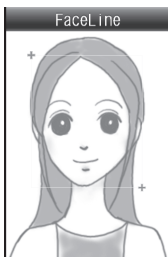


- A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

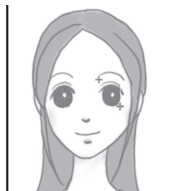
2 Move + to top left of face



3 Move + to bottom right of face



4



- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.

5 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Save here ➔

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



Composite

Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Split Picture	Combine up to four reduced images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

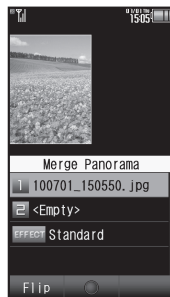
Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

- 1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔
- 2 **Pictures** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔
- 3 ➔ **Edit** ➔
- 4 **Composite** ➔

5 Merge Panorama ➔



- File selected in 2 is set as left image.

6 <Empty> ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔

7 EFFECT ➔ ➔ **Select effect** ➔

- Editing is complete.

8 When finished,

- Merged image appears.

9

10 Enter name ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

Changing Images

After 6, select image ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔

Select image ➔

Switching Image Positions

After 6,



Advanced

- Combining reduced images (P.8-40)

Editing Video

Select start/end points to crop clips.
Available only for files recorded on
SoftBank handsets by SHARP. (Some
files may not be editable.)

- 1 ● ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ●
- 2 **Videos** ➔ ● ➔ **Select file**
➔ ●
- 3 ● ➔ **Edit** ➔ ●



- 4 ● Select start point ➔ ●
 - Start point is set.
- 5 ● Select end point ➔ ●
 - End point is set, then portion between two points plays.
- 6 ●
 - The portion is saved and playback starts.



Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

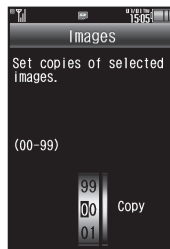
Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔
- 2 **Memory Card** ➔ ➔ **DPOF** ➔
- 3 **Number of Copies** ➔
- 4 **For Each Picture** ➔ ➔

Select folder ➔

5 Select image ➔



6 Enter a number of copies to print ➔

- For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

7

Applying a Number to All Images

In 4, **For All Pictures** ➔ ➔ Enter a number of copies to print ➔

Canceling Specified Number

In 6, enter 00 ➔ ➔

Viewing Current Print Settings

In 6, **Check Settings** ➔

Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.

- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
- Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ➔ **Pictures** ➔

2 Select image ➔ ➔ **Print** ➔

3 **Via Bluetooth** ➔ ➔ **Select printer** ➔

4 **Yes** ➔ - To cancel, press .

When Authorization Code is Required

Enter Authorization Code ➔

Advanced

- Changing print settings (P.8-41)



General

Changing function assigned to 	 → Camera →  → Set Camera Key →  → Select key →  → Select function → 
---	---

Photo Camera

Some functions may be unavailable or accessible via a different menu path depending on camera mode or settings.





































Opening Help	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Help →  • Press  to toggle Help window for Touch Panel and key assignments.
Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch • Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set Set Remote Shutter to On beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Shutter Settings →  → Set Remote Shutter →  → Off →  • Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.

Photo Camera Settings (General)

Selecting Self-timer time/ repeat interval	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Self-timer →  → Select time →  • For Self Timer Camera, select time or repeat interval.
Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Picture Size →  → Select size → 
Setting Center Auto Focus	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting →  → Center Auto Focus → 
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting →  → Macro → 
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting →  → Manual Focus →  → Adjust focus →  • To readjust focus, press  .
Canceling Continuous AF	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting →  → Continuous AF →  → Off → 
Canceling Chase Focus	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting →  → Chase Focus →  → Off → 
Changing focus frame design	In Photo Viewfinder,  → Focus Setting →  → Focus Mark →  → Select pattern → 



Releasing shutter when subject smiles	In Photo Viewfinder, Shutter Settings Shutter Mode Egao
Adjusting smile detection level	In Photo Viewfinder, Shutter Settings Egao level Select level • Lower the level when detection is slow.
Releasing shutter when subject turns face to camera	In Photo Viewfinder, Shutter Settings Shutter Mode Furumuki
Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder, Shutter Settings Shutter Sound Select pattern • Shutter click sounds for continuous shooting and panorama/scanner image capture are fixed.
Changing image quality	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Picture Quality Select quality
Adjusting light sensitivity	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings ISO Sensitivity Select level
Adjusting image color to lighting conditions	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings White Balance Select mode
Adjusting brightness	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Exposure Adjust level
Selecting shake reduction option	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Shake Reducing Select option
Capturing images in low light	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Long Exposure Select time
Switching indicator view	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Display Setting Select option

Selecting send option assigned to	In Photo Viewfinder, Settings Set Send Key Short press or Long press Select option • Select send option separately for each key press method.
Changing save location	In Photo Viewfinder, Save Settings Save Pictures to Select option
Selecting automatic save option	In Photo Viewfinder, Save Settings Auto Save Select option • When Off , press after image capture to save.
Disabling quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images	In Photo Viewfinder, Save Settings Background Save Off
Changing Mobile Light mode	In Photo Viewfinder, Mobile Light Select mode • Mobile Light goes out automatically after ten minutes. Reactivate mobile camera to re-illuminate it. • Do not shine Mobile Light in eyes.

■ Photo Camera Settings (Selected Camera)

Changing continuous shooting mode	In Rapid Shooting Camera Viewfinder, Continuous Type Select mode
Combining successive images	After continuous shooting, Compose Strobe Photo Yes • May be unavailable depending on the number of captured images.
Changing Look Back Camera sound	In Look Back Camera Viewfinder, Turn Sound Button 1 or Button 2 Select sound



Changing Clock/Calendar type for Wallpaper Camera	In Wallpaper Camera Viewfinder, ➔ Clock/Calendar ➔ ➔ Select type ➔
Changing panorama/scanner settings	[Start Here] In Panorama Camera or Scanner Camera Viewfinder, ➔ See below
	Hiding Guides Assisting Lines ➔ ➔ Off ➔
	Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture AE-Lock ➔ ➔ Enable ➔
Previewing panorama image	After panorama image capture, Preview ➔ • Available when Auto Save is Off .
Changing panorama image preview method	After panorama image capture, Preview ➔ ➔ ➔ Select method ➔ • Available when Auto Save is Off .
Changing exposure time for Long Exposure Camera	In Long Exposure Camera Viewfinder, ➔ Exposure Time ➔ ➔ Select time ➔

■ Correction & Preview

Correcting portrait auto focus images	[Start Here] After image capture, ➔ Correlate to Face ➔ ➔ See below • Available when Auto Save is Off . Adjusting Face/Background Brightness Against sun ➔ ➔ ➔
	Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions Portrait ➔ ➔ ➔
Brightening backlit subjects (Dynamic Range Adjustment)	After image capture, ➔ • May be unavailable or require access via D-Range in Options menu depending on Auto Save setting.

Applying mosaic effect	[Start Here] After image capture, ➔ Mosaic Editor ➔ ➔ See below • Available when Auto Save is Off . Whole Face or Eyes Only 1 ➔ (Whole) or 2 ➔ (Eyes) ➔ ➔ All Faces 1 ➔ (Whole) or 2 ➔ (Eyes) ➔ 1 ➔ ➔ Selected Faces 1 ➔ (Whole) or 2 ➔ (Eyes) ➔ Select face ➔ ➔ 2 ➔ ➔ Specific Area (Square or Round) 3 ➔ (Square) or 4 ➔ (Round) ➔ Move + to the upper left corner of the portion ➔ ➔ Move + to the lower right corner of the portion ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔
Improving text readability	After image capture, ➔ Shot Memo ➔ ➔ Correction starts ➔ Select preview image ➔ ➔ • Available when Auto Save is Off .
Seeking guidance for better shots	After image capture, • Follow onscreen instructions. • May be unavailable depending on Auto Save setting.
Checking image details before saving	After image capture, 1 - 9 (Long) • Available when Auto Save is Off or On (Preview Manual) . • Use to see other portions enlarged. Press to enlarge further. Press to cancel. • Key Assignments: 1 (Upper Left) 2 (Upper Center) 3 (Upper Right) 4 (Center Left) 5 (Center) 6 (Center Right) 7 (Lower Left) 8 (Lower Center) 9 (Lower Right) • May be unavailable depending on image size, etc.



Sharpening images	After image capture, ➔ <i>Kukkiri</i> ➔ ➔
Sending images via mail	After image capture, ➔ Complete message ➔
Sending images at high speed via infrared	After image capture, (Long) ➔ Yes or No ➔ • Set recipient device to ready beforehand.

My Camera

Deleting My Cameras	In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ Switch Camera ➔ ➔ Select My Camera ➔ ➔ Delete My Camera ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Editing My Cameras	In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ Switch Camera ➔ ➔ Select My Camera ➔ ➔ Edit My Camera ➔ ➔ My Camera Name: or Note: ➔ ➔ Edit ➔ ➔

Video Camera

Opening Help	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Help ➔ • Press to toggle Help window for Touch Panel and key assignments.
Selecting Self-timer time	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Self-timer ➔ ➔ Select time ➔
Adjusting brightness	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Exposure ➔ ➔ Adjust level
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Focus Setting ➔ ➔ Macro ➔

Adjusting focus manually	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Focus Setting ➔ ➔ Manual Focus ➔ ➔ Adjust focus ➔ • To readjust focus, press .
Canceling Chase Focus	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Focus Setting ➔ ➔ Chase Focus ➔ ➔ Off ➔
Locking focus	In Video Viewfinder, • Frame subject in center of Viewfinder first. • To start over, press again.
Changing image quality	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Video Quality ➔ ➔ Select quality ➔
Switching indicator/Viewfinder view	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Display Setting ➔ ➔ Select option ➔
Selecting automatic save option	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Save Settings ➔ ➔ Auto Save ➔ ➔ Select option ➔
Changing save location	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Save Settings ➔ ➔ Save Videos to ➔ ➔ Select option ➔
Activating Mobile Light	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Mobile Light ➔ ➔ On ➔ • Mobile Light goes out automatically after ten minutes. Reactivate mobile camera to re-illuminate it. • Do not shine Mobile Light in eyes.
Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)	While recording, • Captured images are saved when saving recorded clip; open them via Review or Data Folder.



Changing recording size	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Picture Size ➔ ➔ Select size ➔ ➔ • Selectable item depends on camera mode.
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Microphone ➔ ➔ Off ➔ ➔
Changing video encoding	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Video/Audio Encode ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ ➔ • May be unavailable depending on camera mode and recording size.
Enabling shake reduction	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Shake Reducing ➔ ➔ On ➔ ➔
Changing Microphone mode	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Microphone Mode ➔ ➔ Select mode ➔ ➔
Locking neutral density (ND) filter movement	In Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ ND Filter Setting ➔ ➔ Fixed ➔ ➔

Album

Changing album covers	Start Here ➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Album ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select album ➔ ➔ ➔ Change a Cover ➔ ➔ See below • For By Date albums, only the latest images are available. Selecting from All Images Within Select Picture List ➔ ➔ Select image ➔ ➔ Using Latest Image Latest Picture ➔ ➔
Sorting albums	➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Album ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select album ➔ ➔ ➔ Sort ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ ➔

Unlocking Secret Data Folder temporarily	➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Album ➔ ➔ ➔ Unlock Temporarily ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔
Opening album properties	➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Album ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select album ➔ ➔ ➔ Details ➔ ➔
Removing images from albums	➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Album ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select album ➔ ➔ Select image ➔ ➔ ➔ Remove from Album ➔ ➔ The Album or All Album ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ • <i>The Album</i> does not appear for images under some categories.
Deleting images	➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Album ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select album ➔ ➔ Select image ➔ ➔ ➔ Delete Data ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ • Source files in Data Folder will be deleted.



Editing Images

Picture Editor

Using additional editing options	<p>Start Here → Data Folder → Pictures → Select file → Edit → Picture Editor → See below</p> <p>Changing Text/Outline Color Paste → Select text color → Select outline color</p> <p>Adding Text Paste → Free Text → Enter text → Move text</p> <p>Adding Dates Paste → Date → Move date</p> <p>Adding Stamps Stamp → Select stamp → Move stamp</p> <p>Correcting Image Parameters Correction → Select type</p> <p>Rotating Images Rotate → Select type</p> <p>Applying Mosaic Effect Mosaic → Select shape → Move + to the upper left corner of the portion → Move + to the lower right corner of the portion</p>
----------------------------------	---

Using additional editing options

Start Here → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** → **Select file** → **Edit** → **Picture Editor** → See below

Converting File Format

File Format → **File Format** → **Select format**

- Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press **Back**.

Changing File Size

File Format → **File Size** → **Select size**

- Changing file size may affect image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press **Back**.

Composite

Combining reduced images	<p>Start Here → Data Folder → Pictures → Select file → Edit → Composite → See below</p> <p>Creating Split Picture SplitPicture 480x854 or SplitPicture 240x320 → <Empty> → Select file When finished, Enter name → Save here • Repeat from selecting <Empty> as needed.</p> <p>Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, View Composite</p> <p>Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image → Select another</p> <p>Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, select image → Remove → Yes</p>
--------------------------	--



DPOF

Changing print settings

Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ Phone ➔ Memory Card ➔ DPOF ➔ See below

Adding Dates to Prints

Settings ➔ Add Date ➔ On

Creating an Index Print

Settings ➔ Index Print ➔ On

Resetting

Reset Settings ➔ Yes



Mobile Camera

? Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
- Leaving handset at high temperature may cause camera area to heat up, disabling mobile camera activation; wait a while and retry.
- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

? Cannot use Background Save or Auto Save

- Background Save/Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to **Ask Each Time**.

? Display went dark during image capture

- 945SH camera has built-in mechanical shutter and neutral density (ND) filter. Strong shocks to handset during image capture may close mechanical shutter for camera protection, resulting in blank Viewfinder. Reactivate mobile camera to reopen the shutter.

? Image is dark or distorted

- Avoid capturing strong light sources (sun, lamps, etc.) in the background.

? Captured image appears all white

- When Long Exposure is active, images captured in daylight or good light appear all white.

? Operation sounds recorded

- Operation/zooming sound from built-in mechanical shutter/neutral density (ND) filter may be recorded. Canceling Chase Focus or setting ND Filter Setting to **Fixed** may reduce such sounds.

? An error message appeared while recording with HD Video Camera

- Did you use recommended Memory Card? Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.17-24** "microSD Memory Card Compatibility."
- Video may not record properly on Memory Card to/from which files have been saved/ deleted repeatedly. Format the card on handset and try again. (Formatting deletes all Memory Card files; always back up important information.)

Editing Images

? Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF

? Cannot specify print settings properly

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.



Photo Camera Terms



Center Auto Focus

- Camera automatically selects center of the framed image as point of focus (P.8-35).



Continuous AF

- Focus continuously adjusts as focus-locked subject's position changes (P.8-8, P.8-35).



Chase Focus

- Focus tracks focus-locked subject as it moves within framed image (P.8-8, P.8-35).



Self-timer

- Releases shutter automatically after selected time elapses (P.8-10, P.8-35).



Long Exposure

- Capture images in low light (fireworks, night scenes, etc.) (P.8-11, P.8-36).
Stabilize handset to reduce camera shake.



ISO Sensitivity

- Adjust light sensitivity (P.8-36). Higher ISO brightens low light images, but increases noise, making images grainy.



White Balance

- Select a mode (Daylight, Tungsten, Fluorescent, etc.) for best color balance (P.8-36).



Videos/Music	9-2
Accessing Webcasting Sites (Japanese).....	9-2
Media Player	9-3
Media Player Basics	9-3
Music	9-5
Playing Music.....	9-5

Video	9-6
Playing Video	9-6
Playlists	9-7
Using Playlists	9-7
Additional Functions	9-8
Troubleshooting.....	9-12

9



Video & Music




Accessing Webcasting Sites (Japanese)

Access Yahoo! Streaming and other webcasting sites.

- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi may be required to use some services/content.
- Read information on the source site.

1  ➔ **Videos/Music** ➔ 

- If an update message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

2 **Select item** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Menu Updates






Information window opens for Videos/Music menu update notice. Follow these steps to open it:

1 **In Information window, Menu Update Notif.** ➔ 

2 **Yes** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Suppressing Information Window for Menu Updates

 ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔  **Phone/**
➔ **Videos/Music Menu Updates** ➔
 ➔ **Notification Off** ➔ 

Streaming

Most media on webcasting sites are provided as streams; handset plays media while it downloads.

Playing Media Streams


1 **Select file** ➔ 



- Playback starts.
- For playback window description, see **P.9-6** "Video Playback Window Description."

Stopping Playback During playback,

Playback Sound

- Streaming sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting in Media Player.



Media Player Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 945SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player or transfer files from PCs or AQUOS Blu-ray Disc recorders (hereafter "Blu-ray Disc recorders").
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Transferred Files

SD AUDIO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-Audio Files

WMA

(Memory Card)

Transferred WMA Files

Video File Support

My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Recorded Files

Recorder Contents/ SD VIDEO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-Video Files

Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- If battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming/progressive download). Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi) even while playback is paused.

Compatibility

- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.



Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet. Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

- 1 **Entertainment** **Media Player**



- 2 **Music or Videos**

- 3 **Download Music or Download Videos**

- Follow the links to download media.

Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

Saving AAC Files

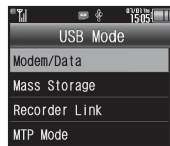
Convert PC music files to 945SH-compatible format (P.17-22), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.17-25) via Mass Storage.

Install USB Cable beforehand.

Saving WMA Files

Follow these steps to save WMA files via compatible software:
(Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.)

- 1 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**



- 2 **MTP Mode**

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the software's help menu for operational instructions.

- 3 **Yes** **Connection ends**

- Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
 - Tools** **Connectivity** **USB Mode** **From**
 - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.



Playing Music

- 1
- 2 **Media Player**
- 3 **My Music**



Music Playlists Window

- 4 **All Music**
- 5 **Select file**



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files. (WMA album art is not supported.)

Using Other Functions while Playing Music

After , or

- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:

Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files

In , **SD AUDIO** or **WMA**

Searching Music Files

After , search text

Lyric Display-Compatible Files

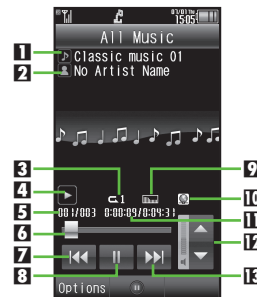
- Press to display lyrics.

Music Playback Operations

Replay	(Long Press: Rewind)
Skip Forward	(Long Press: Fast Forward)
Volume Down	(Long Press: Mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	
Pause	
Stop	In Pause,
Switch Sound Output	(Long)
Open Help	

*Release for playback.

Music Playback Window Description



1 Title	8 Pause
2 Artist name	9 Sound Effects
3 Playback Mode	10 Information link
4 Status	11 Elapsed time
5 Track number	12 Volume control
6 Playback slider	13 Skip forward
7 Replay	

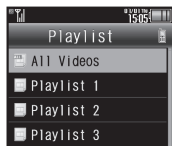
Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point Specifying start point Playing repeatedly or randomly Changing Sound Effects (And more on P.9-8)



Playing Video

- 1 → **Entertainment** →
- 2 **Media Player** → → **Videos** →
- 3 **My Videos** → → **Memory Card or Phone Memory** →



Video Playlists Window

- 4 **All Videos** →

- 5 **Select file** →



Video Playback Window

- 6 → **Playback stops**

Playing Video Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders

In 3, **Recorder Contents** → → 5

Playing SD VIDEO Files

In 3, **SD VIDEO** → → 5

Searching Video Files

After 4, → **Search** → → Enter search text →

At Alarm Time

- Playback pauses.

Video Recorded on Other Devices

- Video image may appear rotated.

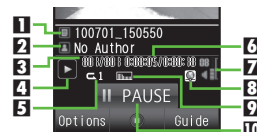
Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see P.9-5 "Music Playback Operations."

Fast Forward/Rewind	
Advance/Reverse Frame	In Pause,
Replay	(Long)
Skip Forward/Backward	
Toggle View	1 (Interface On/Off) 2 (Display Size) 3 (Aspect)

*Each press increases speed.

Video Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode	10	Pause

Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point ● Specifying start point ● Accessing linked information ● Switching audio output to wireless device ● Playing repeatedly or randomly ● Saving scenes as still images ● Hiding linked information (And more on P.9-8 - 9-9)



Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to プレイリスト1:

- 1 ● ➡ **Entertainment** ➡ ●
- 2 **Media Player** ➡ ● ➡ **Music** ➡ ●
- 3 **My Music** ➡ ●



Playlists Window

- 4 **All Music** ➡ ● ➡ **Select file** ➡ ●
- 5 **Add to Playlist** ➡ ● ➡ **プレイリスト1** ➡ ●

Renaming Playlists

- 1 In Playlists window, select **Playlist** ➡ ●
- 2 **Edit List Title** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ●

Advanced

☞ [Music Files] ● Organizing Playlists ● Sorting files ● Opening properties ● Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files ● Deleting All WMA files ● Downloading Contents Keys (P.9-9 - 9-10)
 [Video Files] ● Organizing Playlists ● Sorting files ● Downloading Contents Keys ● Opening properties ● Deleting SD VIDEO files ● Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders (And more on P.9-10 - 9-11)



Media Playback

Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	→ <i>Entertainment</i> → → <i>Media Player</i> → → <i>Music or Videos</i> → → <i>Last Played Music or Last Played Video</i> →
Specifying start point	During playback, → <i>Time Search</i> → → Enter time →
Accessing linked information	During playback, → <i>Access Web Link</i> → → Yes →
Switching audio output to wireless device	→ <i>Entertainment</i> → → <i>Media Player</i> → → <i>Music or Videos</i> → → <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Sound Output</i> → → <i>Bluetooth Device</i> →

Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	During playback, → <i>Playback Mode</i> → → See below
	Repeat One File <i>Repeat</i> →
	Repeat All Files <i>Repeat All</i> →
	Play Randomly <i>Random</i> →
	Repeat Randomly <i>Random Repeat</i> →
Changing Sound Effects	During playback, → <i>Sound Effects</i> → → Select effect →

Changing illumination settings

→ *Entertainment* → → *Media Player* → → *Music* → → *Settings* → → *Music Illumination* → → See below

Enabling Illumination

Switch On/Off → → On → →

Changing Illumination Pattern

Pattern/Color → → Select pattern → →

Select color → →

• Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Key Illumination Pattern

Key Pattern → → Select pattern → →

Video

Some functions may be unavailable depending on file.

Playing repeatedly or randomly

During playback, → *Settings* → → *Playback Mode* → → See below

Repeat One File

Repeat →

Repeat All Files

Repeat All →

Play Randomly

Random →

Saving scenes as still images

During playback, → (Long)
 • Images are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).



Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Entertainment → Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → See below</p>
	<p>Adding New Playlists</p> <p>☰ → Add New Playlist → ● → Enter name → ●</p>
	<p>Deleting Playlists</p> <p>Select Playlist → ☰ → Delete Playlist → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>Deleting Playlist Files</p> <p>Select Playlist → ● → Select file → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>Changing File Order</p> <p>Select Playlist → ● → Select file → ☰ → Change Order → ● → Select target location → ●</p>



Deleting All WMA files

- ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media Player ➔
 ● ➔ Music ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Delete
 All WMA ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
- Source files will be deleted.

Downloading Contents Keys

- ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media Player ➔
 ● ➔ Music ➔ ● ➔ My Music ➔ ● ➔ ➔
 Select tab (folder) ➔ Select Playlist ➔ ● ➔
 Select file (with) ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists

- [Start Here] ● ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media
 Player ➔ ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ My Videos ➔
 ● ➔ Memory Card or Phone Memory ➔ ● ➔
 See below

Adding New Playlists

- ➔ Add New Playlist ➔ ● ➔ Enter name
 ➔ ●

Deleting Playlists

- Select Playlist ➔ ➔ Delete Playlist ➔ ● ➔
 Yes ➔ ●

Deleting Playlist Files

- Select Playlist ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ➔
 Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Changing File Order

- Select Playlist ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ➔
 Change Order ➔ ● ➔ Select target location
 ➔ ●

Sorting files

- ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media Player ➔
 ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ My Videos ➔ ● ➔
 Memory Card or Phone Memory ➔ ● ➔ All
 Videos ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Sort ➔ ● ➔ Select
 option ➔ ●

Downloading Contents Keys

- ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media Player ➔
 ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ My Videos ➔ ● ➔
 Memory Card or Phone Memory ➔ ● ➔ All
 Videos ➔ ● ➔ Select file (with) ➔ ● ➔
 Yes ➔ ●
- Follow onscreen instructions.





Opening properties

- [Start Here] ● ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media
 Player ➔ ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ See below
- SD VIDEO Files**
- SD VIDEO ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ➔ Details
 ➔ ●
- Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders**
- Recorder Contents ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ➔
 Details ➔ ●
- Other Files**
- My Videos ➔ ● ➔ Memory Card or Phone
 Memory ➔ ● ➔ Select Playlist ➔ ● ➔ Select
 file ➔ ➔ Details ➔ ●

Deleting SD VIDEO files

- ➔ Entertainment ➔ ● ➔ Media Player ➔
 ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ SD VIDEO ➔ ● ➔
 Select file ➔ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
- Source files will be deleted.



Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p>● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Media Player</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Videos</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Recorder Contents</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select file ➤  ➤ <i>Rename</i> ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ●</p>
Checking Memory Card memory status	<p>● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Media Player</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Videos</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Recorder Contents</i> ➤ ● ➤  ➤ <i>Memory Remaining</i> ➤ ●</p>
Deleting files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p>Start Here ● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Media Player</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Videos</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Recorder Contents</i> ➤ ● ➤ See below</p> <p>Single Files Select file ➤  ➤ <i>Delete</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Yes</i> ➤ ●</p> <p>All Files  ➤ <i>Delete All</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Yes</i> ➤ ●</p>



Music



How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs/Tones).



WMA files do not appear (WMA files are not transferable)

- Did you use 945SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
- Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)
- WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.



Cannot play WMA files

- Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

Video



How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).



Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.



S! Appli	10-2
Using S! Applications.....	10-2
Mobile Widget.....	10-3
Customizing Standby Display (Japanese).....	10-3

Additional Functions	10-6
Troubleshooting.....	10-10

10

S! Applications & Widgets



Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 945SH-compatible S! Applications, including games.

- Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use S! Applications over Wi-Fi.

Remote Control (Famalink Remote)

- Use **ファミリンクリモコン** for **AQUOS S!** Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

- 1 ➔ **S! Appli** ➔
- 2 **S! Appli Library** ➔



S! Appli Library

- 3 **Select application** ➔

Network S! Applications

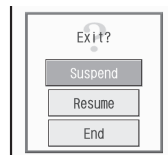
- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls

- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Exiting S! Applications

- 1



- 2 **End** ➔

Pausing S! Applications

In 2, **Suspend** ➔

Resuming S! Applications

➔ **Resume** ➔

- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused.
(Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select **End** to exit the S! Application.

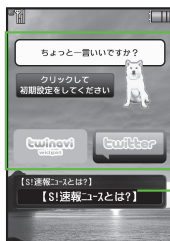
Advanced

- Downloading S! Applications
- Adjusting S! Application sound volume
- Canceling surround effect
- Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions
- Setting S! Application to activate in Standby
- Setting Permissions
- Opening properties
- Moving S! Applications to Memory Card
- Changing S! Application settings
- Deleting S! Applications
- Restoring default S! Application settings
- Restoring default S! Appli Library
- Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 945SH
- Opening Java™ license information (P.10-6 - 10-7)



Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/ functions immediately from Standby.



Widgets

S! Quick News &
S! Friend's Status Widget

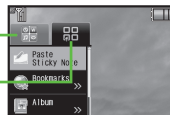
Saving Widgets to Standby

Save up to three widgets (excluding *S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況*, *歩数計* and *家計簿*).

1 ➔ ➔ **Paste Icon** ➔

Widget Tab

Standby Shortcut Tab



2

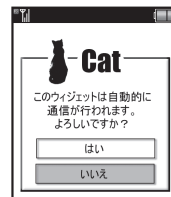
3 **Select widget** ➔

- Corresponding icon appears.

4 **Specify target location**
➔

Using Widgets

1 ➔ **Select widget** ➔



- Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

Unlocking Temporarily

➔ ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset**
Code ➔

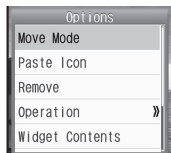
Advanced

Moving widgets Removing multiple widgets at once Locking widgets (And more on P.10-8)



Removing Widgets from Standby

1  →  Select widget → 



2 Remove → 

Obtaining Widgets

1  → **Widget** → 



Mobile Widget Menu

2 **Widget Store** → 


- Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets

- Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:


[Mobile Widget Menu] **Widget Contents** →  → **Select widget** →  → **Install** →  → **Yes** → 

Activating Widgets Not Saved in Standby

[Mobile Widget Menu] **Widget Contents** →  → **Select widget** →  → 

Deleting Widgets





1 In Mobile Widget menu, **Widget Contents** → 

2 **Select widget** → 

- *SI速報ニュース/SIともだち状況*, *歩数計* and *家計簿* cannot be deleted.









3 **Delete** →  → **Yes** → 

Deleting All Widgets

In   → **Delete All** →  → **Yes** → 

- If there is a widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears; follow onscreen prompt.

Advanced

-  Opening properties
-  Saving widgets to Icon View
-  Slowing pointer speed
-  Changing automatic update interval
-  Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan
-  Hiding confirmation outside Japan
-  Disabling cookies
-  Deleting cookies (P.10-8 - 10-9)










Using Function-Linked Widgets






945SH is preloaded with *SI速報ニュース!*と*もだち状況* (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget), *歩数計* (Pedometer widget) and *家計簿* (Household Accounts widget).

S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

■ Setting View Pattern

- 1  ➔  Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➔ 
- 2 *Settings* ➔  ➔ *Pattern Setting* ➔ 
- 3 Select item ➔  (☐/ ☒) ➔ 







■ Switching View

- 1  ➔  Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➔ 
- 2 *Operation* ➔  ➔ *Switch Pattern* ➔ 
 - Repeat the steps above to switch the view.

Pedometer Widget

First, save *歩数計* to Standby.

■ Saving Body Information

- 1  ➔  Select Pedometer widget ➔ 
- 2 *Settings* ➔  ➔ *Body Info Settings* ➔ 
- 3 Complete information entry ➔ 

Household Accounts Widget

First, save *家計簿* to Standby.

■ Opening Household Accounts Window

- 1  ➔  Select Household Accounts widget ➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Adding news items ● Changing news scroll speed ● Showing unread news only ● Assigning members ● Managing members (P.10-9)



S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Download S! Appli ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Application Volume ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●</p>
Canceling surround effect	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Surround ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p>
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	<p>Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Showing Calls Select item ➔ ● ➔ Show Call Notice ➔ ●</p> <p>Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail Incoming Message ➔ ● ➔ Message Priority ➔ ●</p> <p>Showing Alarm Notice Alarm ➔ ● ➔ Alarm Notice ➔ ●</p> <p>Showing S! Appli Notice Notification ➔ ● ➔ Start Notice ➔ ●</p>

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby

Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ See below

Activating Screensaver

Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●

Setting Screensaver

S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔

☐ ➔ As Screensaver ➔ ●

- Switch On/Off is set to **On**.
- As Screensaver** appears for compatible S! Applications.
- Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.

Changing Screensaver Activation Time

Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔
Activation Time ➔ ● ➔ Enter time ➔ ●

Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart

Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Stop
Auto Start ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●

Setting Permissions

Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library
➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ☐ ➔

Permission ➔ ● ➔ See below

Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations

Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●

Resetting Permission Settings

Reset Settings ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Opening properties

● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ●
➔ Select application ➔ ☐ ➔ Details ➔ ●



Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Ⓜ ➔ Select application ➔ ● (□/☑) ➔</p> <p>Complete selection ➔ ☒ ➔ Move to Card ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose Yes or No and press ●. Some S! Applications may not be moved to Memory Card.
Changing S! Application settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ●</p> <p>➔ See below</p> <p>Setting Backlight Status</p> <p>Backlight ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select option ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight settings. <p>Disabling Backlight Flashing</p> <p>Backlight ➔ ● ➔ Blink ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p> <p>Disabling Vibration</p> <p>Vibration ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p>
Deleting S! Applications	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ●</p> <p>➔ Select application ➔ ☒ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code may be required. Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Restoring default S! Application settings	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Reset Settings ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>
Restoring default S! Appli Library	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Memory All Clear ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 945SH	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Synchronization ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>
Opening Java™ license information	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Information ➔ ●</p>



Mobile Widget

■ Operations in Standby

Selecting widget display option	→ → Settings → → Show Widget → → Select option → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Always On: Widgets always appear. • On/Off: Press to show/hide widgets. • Off in Standby: Press to show widgets. • Always Off: Widgets do not appear even when is pressed. (Reconfigure via Show Widget in Standby Display menu.)
Moving widgets	→ → Select widget → → Move Mode → → Drag widget to target location →
Moving widgets to front/back	→ → Select widget → → Operation → → To Front or To Back →
Updating view	→ → Select widget → → Operation → → Update View →
Removing multiple widgets at once	→ → Operate from List → → Remove → → Select widget → (✓) → Complete selection → → Yes →
Locking widgets	→ → Settings → → Lock Settings → → On → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Handset Code is required to re-select Off.

■ Managing

Opening properties	→ Widget → → Widget Contents → → Select widget → → Details → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select widget other than <i>SI速報ニュース/SIともだち状況、歩数計</i> or <i>家計簿</i>.
Saving widgets to Icon View	→ Widget → → Widget Contents → → Select widget → → Add to Icon View → → Select page → → Specify target location →
Slowing pointer speed	→ Widget → → Widget Contents → → Select widget → → → Cursor Speed → → Slow → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May be unavailable for some widgets.



■ Settings

Changing automatic update interval	⌚ ➤ Widget ➤ ⌚ ➤ Settings ➤ ⌚ ➤ Auto Refresh ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select interval ➤ ⌚
Receiving updates automatically while outside Japan	⌚ ➤ Widget ➤ ⌚ ➤ Settings ➤ ⌚ ➤ AutoConnect Abroad ➤ ⌚ ➤ On ➤ ⌚
Hiding confirmation outside Japan	⌚ ➤ Widget ➤ ⌚ ➤ Settings ➤ ⌚ ➤ Set Use Abroad ➤ ⌚ ➤ Off ➤ ⌚
Disabling cookies	⌚ ➤ Widget ➤ ⌚ ➤ Settings ➤ ⌚ ➤ Cookies ➤ ⌚ ➤ Disabled ➤ ⌚
Deleting cookies	⌚ ➤ Widget ➤ ⌚ ➤ Settings ➤ ⌚ ➤ Delete Cookies ➤ ⌚ ➤ Yes ➤ ⌚

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)

Adding news items	⌚ ➤ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➤ ☰ ➤ Operation ➤ ⌚ ➤ Content Menu ➤ ⌚ ➤ Add News ➤ ⌚ ➤ S! Quick News List ➤ ⌚ ➤ 登録はこちら ➤ ⌚ ➤ Yes ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select genre ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select item ➤ ⌚ • Follow onscreen instructions.
Changing news scroll speed	⌚ ➤ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➤ ☰ ➤ Operation ➤ ⌚ ➤ Content Menu ➤ ⌚ ➤ News Display ➤ ⌚ ➤ News Speed ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select speed ➤ ⌚
Showing unread news only	⌚ ➤ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➤ ☰ ➤ Operation ➤ ⌚ ➤ Content Menu ➤ ⌚ ➤ News Display ➤ ⌚ ➤ Target News ➤ ⌚ ➤ Unread Only ➤ ⌚

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)

Assigning members	⌚ ➤ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➤ ☰ ➤ Operation ➤ ⌚ ➤ Content Menu ➤ ⌚ ➤ Assign Member ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select category ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select entry/member ➤ ⌚ ➤ (Empty) ➤ ⌚
Managing members	Start Here ⌚ ➤ Select S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select member ➤ ☰ ➤ Operation ➤ ⌚ ➤ Content Menu ➤ ⌚ ➤ See below Deleting Members Delete ➤ ⌚ ➤ Yes ➤ ⌚ Changing Member Order Move ➤ ⌚ ➤ ☰ (Up) or ☹ (Down) ➤ ⌚ Changing Member Icons Change Icon ➤ ⌚ ➤ Select Pictogram ➤ ⌚



S! Applications



Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- Memory Card memory may be low.



S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite *Calls & Alarms* settings

- Regardless of setting, a notice appears for Screensaver S! Applications.




Keitai Wi-Fi connection failure confirmation appears upon starting S! Application

- Handset may be outside Wi-Fi range. Move into range or cancel **Switch from Wi-Fi to 3G** in Switch Notification.



(S! Appli Notification indicator) does not disappear

- To delete , open the corresponding Information item as follows:



Calendar & Tasks	11-2
Calendar	11-2
Tasks	11-6
Alarms	11-8
Using Alarms	11-8
Wakeup TV	11-10
Using Wakeup TV	11-10
Charging Theater	11-12
Using Charging Theater	11-12
Relaxation Time	11-13
Playing Animation with Music & Illumination	11-13
Household Accounts	11-14
Managing Household Expenses ...	11-14
Calculator	11-18
Using Calculator	11-18
Expenses Memo	11-19
Adding Expenses	11-19
Osaifu-Keitai®	11-20
Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)	11-20
Locking IC Card	11-21
Simulated Call	11-24
Faking Incoming Calls	11-24
Stopwatch	11-25
Using Stopwatch	11-25
Countdown Timer	11-26
Using Countdown Timer	11-26
World Clock	11-27
Opening World Clock	11-27

Hour Minder	11-28
Using Hour Minder	11-28
Pedometer	11-29
Using Pedometer	11-29
Compass	11-31
Using Compass	11-31
S! GPS Navi	11-32
Using S! GPS Navi	11-32
Document Viewer	11-35
Opening PC Documents	11-35
Notepad	11-36
Saving Text	11-36
ASCII Art	11-37
Using ASCII Art	11-37
Voice Recorder	11-38
Recording/Playing Voice	11-38
Scan Barcode	11-39
Scanning Barcodes	11-39
Create QR Code	11-40
Creating QR Codes	11-40
Scan Card	11-41
Scanning Business Cards	11-41
Scan Text	11-42
Scanning Text	11-42
Kanji/English Grabber	11-43
Using Kanji/English Grabber	11-43
Additional Functions	11-44
Troubleshooting	11-59

11

Handy Extras

Calendar

Opening Calendar

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/
Life menu, **Calendar** ➔



Calendar Window

- Press to toggle Calendar view.

Key Assignments

■ All Views

Open Previous Page	
Open Next Page	
Open Help	

■ 1Month/3Month View

Select Date	
Go to Current Date	

■ 6Month View

Go to Current Month	
Select Month	

■ Week View

Select Date	
Select Time Block	

Spinguru Log Calendar (Spinguru Log)

Long Press in Calendar window to switch to Spinguru Log Calendar (Spinguru Log). Select a date and press to save/check schedules, view operation history (mail records, call log, etc.), and more.



Spinguru Log Menu



Timeline Window



Opening Help

[Spinguru Log Menu]/[Timeline Window] ➔ **Explain Operation** ➔

- To return, press .

Returning to Calendar Window

[Spinguru Log Menu] (Long)
Accessing Operation History, Etc.
[Timeline Window] (Long)

Advanced

- Changing default view Jumping to specified date Changing date color Selecting task view option Adding stamps (1Month/3Month View)
 Hiding schedules Saving additional holidays Hiding/showing holidays (P.11-44)

Saving Schedules

Follow these steps to save subject, Category, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details:

(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1 In Calendar window, select date ➡ ●



- 2 <Add New Entry> ➡ ●

- 3 Enter subject ➡ ●



- 4 ● Preset ➡ Select Category ➡ ●

- 5 Enter start date/time ➡ ●



- 6 End: ➡ ● ➡ Enter end date/time ➡ ●

- 7 Alarm: ➡ ●

- 8 Alarm Time: ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ● ➡ Y

- 9 Description: ➡ ● ➡ Enter schedule details ➡ ●

- 10 Y ➡ Saved

Selecting Category from History

In 4, ● History ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ From 5

Selecting Custom Category

In 4, ● Definable ➡ Select Category ➡ ● ➡ From 5

All-Day Schedule

In 5, ● ➡ ● ➡ From 5

Custom Alarm Time

In 8, Alarm Time: ➡ ● ➡ Other ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ Y ➡ From 5

Advanced

- Setting Location
- Creating Categories
- Saving repetitive schedules
- Editing entries
- Changing Alarm tone/video & duration
- Changing Alarm volume
- Selecting Vibration option
- Changing illumination settings (And more on P.11-44 - 11-45)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

**Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby**

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks

- In Calendar window, select date**



Schedule List

- Select schedule or task**
- Standby returns**

Opening Task List

In , select task **Go to Tasks**

Accessing Secret Entries

[Calendar Window] **Unlock Temporarily** **Enter Handset Code**

Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

- In schedule list, select schedule**
- Related Mail**

 - Related message opens.
 - To return to schedule window, press .

Deleting Message from Schedule

After , **Related Mail:**

Yes

Advanced

1

- Searching entries
- Checking memory status
- Deleting all entries
- Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)
- Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month/3Month/6Month View)
- Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) (P.11-46)

Information Link

Set to show or hide the following information in Calendar.

Reservation List	TV Timer and TV Recording Timer entries
Birthday	Birthdays entered in Phone Book
What is today? (Japanese)	Preset anniversaries, commemorative days, etc.

- 1 In Calendar window,
- 2 **Calendar Settings** \rightarrow
- 3 **Data to Show** \rightarrow
- 4 Select item \rightarrow (☐/☒)
- 5

Spinguru Log Information Link

- In Spinguru Log, operation history of various functions are also displayable.

Editing TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

- 1 In schedule list, select entry \rightarrow
- 2 **Edit** \rightarrow
- 3 **Edit** \rightarrow

Deleting Entries

- In , **Delete** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Yes** \rightarrow
- Timer is canceled.

Making Birthday Calls

- 1 In schedule list, select entry \rightarrow
 - 2 **Call** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Select phone number** \rightarrow
- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

Sending Birthday Messages

- In , **Mail** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Select number/address** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Complete message** \rightarrow
- Omit number/address selection step if only one number or address is saved.
 - For phone numbers, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** and press .

Deleting Schedules

■ One Entry

- 1 In schedule list, select schedule \rightarrow
- 2 **Delete** \rightarrow \rightarrow **This Appointment** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Yes** \rightarrow

■ All Entries of the Day

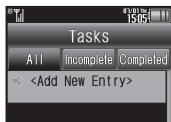
- 1 In Calendar window, select date \rightarrow
- 2 **Delete** \rightarrow \rightarrow **All This Day** \rightarrow \rightarrow **Yes** \rightarrow

Tasks

Saving Tasks

Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/
Life menu, **Tasks** →



- 2 **<Add New Entry>** →

- 3 **Enter subject** →



- 4 **Enter due date/time** →



- 5 **Alarm:** →

- 6 **Alarm Time:** → → **Select time** → →

- 7 **Description:** → → **Enter task details** →

- 8 → **Saved**

Task with No Due Date/Time

In 4, → → **From** 7

Custom Alarm Time

In 6, **Alarm Time:** → → **Other** → → **Enter date/time** → → → **From** 7

Advanced

1

- Hiding tasks
- Editing tasks
- Setting priority
- Changing Alarm tone/video & duration
- Changing Alarm volume
- Selecting Vibration option
- Changing illumination settings
- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.11-46 - 11-47)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

**Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby**

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

Stopping Alarm to Open Task

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , , or .

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

- ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/
Life menu, **Tasks** ➔



Task List

- Use to open Completed or Incomplete task list.

- Select task ➔



- ➔ **Standby returns**

Accessing Secret Entries

- After
 - 1, ➔ **Unlock Temporarily**
➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Marking Tasks as Completed

- After
 - 1, select task ➔

Deleting Tasks**One Entry**

- In task list, select task ➔

- Delete** ➔

- This Task** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

All Completed Tasks

- In task list,

- Delete** ➔

- All Comp. Tasks** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

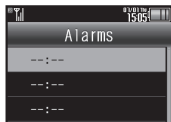
- Searching tasks ● Sorting tasks by priority ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all tasks (P.11-47)

Using Alarms

Setting Alarm

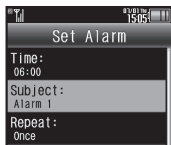
Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:
(Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

- 1** **Tools** **In PIM/ Life menu, Alarms**



Alarm List

- 2** **--:--** **Enter hour (24-hour format)** **Enter minutes**



- 3** **Repeat:**



- 4** **Selected Days**

- 5** **Select day** **Complete selection**

- 6** **Snooze:**

- 7** **Select interval**
• For custom intervals, select *Other*.

- 8** **Alarm Volume:**

- 9** **Adjust level**

- 10** **Duration:**

- 11** **Select time**

• For custom Duration, select *Other*.

- 12** **Saved**

• For more settings, repeat **2** - **12**.

- 13** **Standby returns**

Activating Alarm Once or Daily

In **4**, **Once** or **Every Day (All)**

From **6**

Selecting/Canceling All Days

In **5**, **Check All** or **Uncheck All**

Excluding Holidays

In **5**, select day

Complete selection **Except**

Holidays **From** **6**

Advanced

1

- Editing entries
- Saving entry name
- Changing Alarm tone/video
- Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time
- Changing illumination settings
- Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode
- Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (P.11-48)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Alarm

- Press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze

While Snoozing, Yes

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1 In Alarm list, select entry

2 *Switch Off*
• Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In , *Switch On*

Deleting Alarm

One Entry

1 In Alarm list, select entry

2 *Reset Alarm*

3 Yes

All Entries

1 In Alarm list, select entry

2 *Clear All*

3 Yes

Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

- Complete TV Area setup beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/Life menu, Wakeup TV** ➔



Wakeup TV List

2 --:-- ➔ ➔ **Enter hour (24-hour format)** ➔ **Enter minutes** ➔



Wakeup TV Menu

- 3** **Repeat:** ➔
- 4** **Selected Days** ➔
- 5** **Select day** ➔ (/) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔
- 6** **Channel:** ➔
- 7** **Select channel** ➔
- 8** ➔ **Saved**
- For more settings, repeat **2** - **8**.
- 9** ➔ **Standby returns**

Activating TV Once or Daily

In **4**, **Once or Every Day (All)** ➔
➔ **From**

Selecting/Canceling All Days

In **5**, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All** ➔

Excluding Holidays

In **5**, select day ➔ (/) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ **Except Holidays** ➔ () ➔ ➔ **From**

Canceling Alarm

• Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To cancel Alarm, follow these steps:

[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm On/Off:** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔ ➔ **From**

Adjusting Alarm Volume

[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm Volume:** ➔ ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ ➔ **From**

Advanced

- Editing entries • Changing Alarm tone/video • Changing illumination settings • Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (P.11-49)

At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.



Stopping Alarm Instantly

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- TV may not activate depending on the function.

After TV is On for a Period of Time

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

2 *Wakeup TV Off* ➔

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In **2**, *Wakeup TV On* ➔

Deleting Wakeup TV

■ One Entry

1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

2 *Reset Alarm* ➔

3 *Yes* ➔

■ All Entries

1 In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔

2 *Clear All* ➔

3 *Yes* ➔

Using Charging Theater

Play Slide Show or video while charging.

Enabling Charging Theater

Example: Setting Slide Show
Enabling Charging Theater sets Viewer
Position Move Settings to **Off(Standby)**.

- 1 **Tools** In PIM/
Life menu, **Charging
Theater**
- 2 **Switch On/Off** **On**
 Yes
- 3 **Switch Photo/Video**
- 4 **Photo** **Select sub
folder** **Set this
folder**

- Omit steps for sub folder when using
images saved in Pictures folder.

Setting Video

In 4, **Video** **Select file**

Changing Playback Time

In 3, **Playback Time** **Select
time**

Enabling Video Audio Output

In 3, **Video Sound Output**
On

Disabling Repetitive Video Playback

In 3, **Video Repeat** **Once
Play**

Activating Charging Theater

Start charging in Standby; Slide Show or
video plays according to settings.

Incoming Calls while Charging Theater is Active

- Charging Theater ends.

Playing Animation with Music & Illumination

Play preset animations or downloaded Flash® files with music and illumination. Set playback time, volume, etc. as needed.

1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/
Life menu, **Relaxation Time**
➔ ●

2 **Select type** ➔ ●

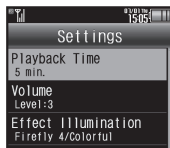
- Animation appears.
- For **Flash®**, select a file and press ●.
 - Key LEDs do not illuminate for soundless Flash® files.
- Message appears when Playback Time is set to **Continuous Play** (except when charging battery); press ● to proceed.

Setting Relaxation Time

Follow these steps to set playback time, volume and Key Illumination pattern:

1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/
Life menu, **Relaxation Time**
➔ ●

2 **Settings** ➔ ●



3 **Playback Time** ➔ ●

4 **Select time** ➔ ●

- For custom playback time, select **Other**.

5 **Volume** ➔ ●

6 **Adjust level** ➔ ●

7 **Effect Illumination** ➔ ●

8 **Key Pattern** ➔ ●

9 **Select pattern** ➔ ● ➔ (Y)

10 (Y) ➔ **Standby returns**

Changing Illumination Pattern

In ③, **Pattern/Color** ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ● ➔ **Select color** ➔ ● ➔ (Y)

- Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Setting Music to Control Illumination

In ③, **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **Link to Sound** ➔ ● ➔ (Y)

- Key Illumination varies by music when **Link to Sound** is set.

Disabling Illumination

In ③, **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ● ➔ (Y)

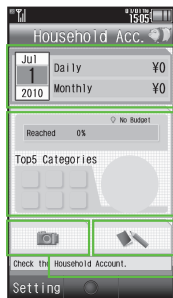
Managing Household Expenses

Scan receipts with mobile camera to manage expenses on handset.

Setup

Specify closing day, closing month and budget for the month.

- 1 → **Tools** → → **In PIM/ Life menu, Household Accounts** →



Totals Panel

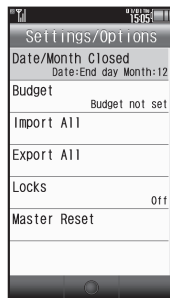
Charts Panel

Manual Input Panel

Scan Receipt Panel

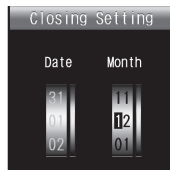
Household Accounts Window

- 2



Account Setup Menu

- 3 **Date/Month Closed** →



- Press to change default closing date (end of the month); use to move between date and month fields.

- 4 **Enter date/month** →

- 5 **Yes** →

- 6 **Budget** → → **Enter amount** →

- 7 → **Household Accounts window returns**

Restricting Access to Household Accounts by Handset Code

[Account Setup Menu] **Locks** → → **On** →

Resetting Household Accounts

[Account Setup Menu] **Master Reset** → → **Yes** →

Saving Entries

Scanning Receipts

Scan receipts with mobile camera to enter date, expense items, fees/prices and total amount automatically.

Scan may fail if receipt is too long, folded, faded, etc.; some formats are not supported.

1 In Household Accounts window, select scan receipt panel ➡

2 Frame receipt on Display



Scan Window

- Frame date, expense items and total amount. Align text parallel to reference lines.

3

- To cancel, press .

4

➡ **Scan results appear**




- To add, delete or edit expense items, see P.11-16 "Entering Manually."

5






- Entry is saved.

Opening Operation Guide

[Scan Window] 

- Press  to return to scan window.

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

Entering Manually

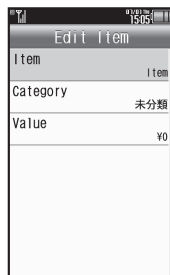
- 1** In Household Accounts window, select manual input panel ➡ ●



Expense Input Window

- 2** Select date panel ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ●
- 3** Shop ➡ ● ➡ Select shop/facility ➡ ●
- 4** Paid ➡ ● ➡ Select payment method ➡ ●

- 5** Item ➡ ●



- 6** Item ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●
- 7** Category ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●
- 8** Value ➡ ● ➡ Enter amount ➡ ● ➡ ¥
- 9** ¥ ➡ Saved

Adding Expense Items

After ⑤, select item field ➡ ☒ ➡

Add Items ➡ ● ➡ From ⑤

Deleting Expense Items

After ⑤, select item ➡ ☒ ➡ Delete

➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ● ➡ ⑤

Changing Categories of All Items at Once

[Expense Input Window] Category

Change ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡

● ➡ ⑤

Advanced

- Renaming icon labels ● Importing Household Accounts data ● Exporting Household Accounts data (P.11-49)

Opening Expense Records

Opening Entries

- 1 In Household Accounts window, select totals panel



- 2 Select date



Daily Expense Log

- 3 Select entry

- Details appear.

Deleting an Entry

[Daily Expense Log] Select entry ➡ ➡ Delete Receipt ➡ ➡ Yes ➡

Deleting All Entries

[Daily Expense Log] ➡ Delete Day Data or Delete Month Data ➡ ➡ Yes ➡

Viewing Expense Trends

Follow these steps to view monthly expenses, budgets and balances:

- 1 In Household Accounts window, select charts panel



- 2 Results by Month

	Balance	Expenses
Jan	¥36,110	¥203,890
Feb	¥80,000	¥180,000
Mar	¥63,000	¥177,000
Apr	¥40,300	¥199,700
May	¥80,480	¥159,520
Jun	¥57,000	¥183,000

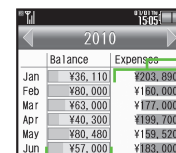
Results by Month Window

- Press to toggle budget and balance.
- Use to open previous or next year.

Viewing Other Expense Trends

In 2, select item ➡

Monthly Result Charts



Expenses

Balances

- In Balance chart, gray area of each bar represents balance; bar turns pink when balance is zero or less.
- In Expenses chart, orange bar extends to the left as monthly expense increases, with the middle of the chart indicating average monthly expense for the year.

Using Calculator

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/
Life menu, **Calculator** ➔



Calculator Window

Key Assignments

+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
× (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Sum)	
C-CE (Clear)	
CM (Clear Memory)	
RM (Recall Memory)	
M+ (Add to Memory)	
. (Decimal)	
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	
% (Percentage)	

Memory Calculation

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset is powered off.

Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

Enter **800,000** ➔ **x** ➔ **30** ➔ **%**

■ **240,000** appears.

- 2 Use Keypad to enter digits
➔ **Calculate**

- 3 ➔ **Standby returns**

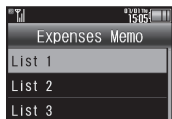
Advanced

- Copying calculation results Changing exchange rate for currency conversion Converting currencies (P.11-50)

Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

- 1



Expenses Memo Menu

- 2 Select list
- 3 Add New
- 4 Enter amount



- 5 Select Category
- Saved

Saving under Custom Category

- In , Other
- Renaming Lists**
 [Expenses Memo Menu] Select list
- Resetting All List Names**
 [Expenses Memo Menu]

Checking Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo menu, select list



Expenses Memo List

- 2

Saving Entries to Notepad

- [Expenses Memo List] Select entry

Deleting Entries

One Entry

- 1 In Expenses Memo list, select entry
- 2 Delete Item
- 3 Yes

All Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo list, select entry
- 2 Delete All
- 3 Yes
 - All entries on the list are deleted.

Advanced

- Changing Category of saved entry Changing amount Renaming Categories (P.11-50)

Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 945SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu,
Osaifu-Keitai ➔ ● ➔ **Lifestyle-Appli**
➔ ● ➔ **Select application** ➔ ●

Important Lifestyle-Appli Usage Notes

- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

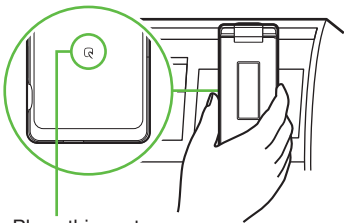
Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:

Example: Making an electronic payment

- Lifestyle-Appli activation is not necessary.
- Transactions are possible even while handset is off (if battery is adequately charged).
- Calls/Internet transmissions do not affect transactions.

1 Place  logo over reader/writer ➔ **Confirm scan results**



Place this part
over reader/writer

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor

- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Advanced

-  ● Enabling to view e-money balances ● Moving applications up/down Balance Info list ● Removing applications from Balance Info list (P.11-50)

Locking IC Card

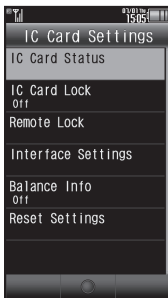
IC Card Lock

Restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

- 1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/**
Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➔



- 2** **IC Card Settings** ➔



IC Card Settings Menu

- 3** **IC Card Lock** ➔ ➔ **On**
➔

- 4** **Yes** ➔

Canceling IC Card Lock

- In , **IC Card Lock** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔
➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Advanced

- Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands Opening IC Card properties Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (P.11-50 - 11-51)

Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

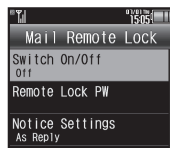
Mail Remote Lock	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

Mail Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, **Osaifu-Keitai** ➔ ●
- 2 **IC Card Settings** ➔ ●
- 3 **Remote Lock** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●

4 Mail Remote Lock ➔ ●



Mail Remote Lock Menu

5 Remote Lock PW ➔ ●

6 Enter password ➔ ●

7 Switch On/Off ➔ ●

8 On ➔ ● ➔ ●

Canceling Mail Remote Lock

In ●, **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ● ➔ ●

■ Activating Remote Lock via Mail

If handset cannot receive mail, IC Card Lock remains unset.

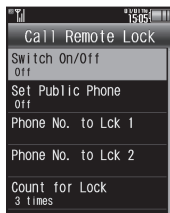
1 Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject

- After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

Call Remote Lock

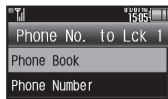
■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/ Life menu, Osaifu-Keitai** ➔
- 2 **IC Card Settings** ➔
- 3 **Remote Lock** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔
- 4 **Call Remote Lock** ➔



Call Remote Lock Menu

- 5 **Phone No. to Lck 1 or Phone No. to Lck 2** ➔



- 6 **Phone Book** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔ ➔ **Select phone number** ➔
- Select *Phone Number* to enter directly.

- 7 **Switch On/Off** ➔

- 8 **On** ➔ ➔

Enabling Activation via Public Phone

In 5, **Set Public Phone** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔ ➔ **From**

Canceling Call Remote Lock

In 5, **Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔

■ Activating Remote Lock via Phone

If handset cannot receive calls, IC Card Lock remains unset.

- 1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

- Send Caller ID.

- 2 **Handset receives call** ➔ **End the call**

- The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

- 3 **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**

- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see P.11-51.

Setting Simulated Call

- 1 → **Tools** → → In PIM/Life menu, **Simulated Call** →



Simulated Call Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →

- 3 **Set Caller** →
- 4 **Name:** → → Enter name →
- 5 **Phone Number:** → → Enter phone number → →
- 6 **Assign Tone** → → Select tone/file →
- 7 → PIM/Life menu returns

When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Simulated Call

[Simulated Call Menu] **Switch On/Off**

→ → **Off** → →

Setting Wait Time

[Simulated Call Menu] **Receive Timing**

→ → Select time → →

Using Simulated Call

- 1 (Long)
 - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
 - Ringtone stops after a period of time.
- 2 In incoming Voice Call window, press
 - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)
- 3 → Standby returns

When Receive Timing is Not Immediately

- Press or during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

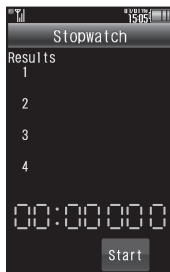
Advanced

- Starting via Simulated Call menu
- Clearing caller information
- Overriding Silent volume setting (P.11-51)

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops if battery runs low.

- 1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Clock/Gauge** ➔ **Stopwatch** ➔



Stopwatch Window

- 2** ➔ **Stopwatch starts**
- 3** ➔ **Stopwatch stops**
 • Press to resume.
- 4** ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Stopwatch ends**
 • Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times

While Stopwatch is running,

Saving Records to Notepad

After , ➔ **Save to Notepad** ➔

Resetting Records

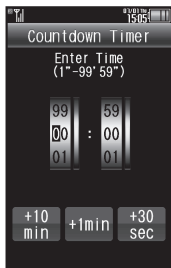
After , ➔ **From**

Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Using Countdown Timer

- 1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Clock/Gauge** ➔ **Countdown Timer** ➔

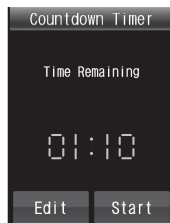


Timer Entry Window

- 2** **Enter minutes ➔ Enter seconds**

- Tap **+10min**, **+1min** or **+30sec** as needed.

- 3**



Countdown Timer Window

- 4** ➔ **Countdown starts**
- Press to change time.

- 5** **Set time elapses ➔ Tone sounds**

- 6** ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Countdown Timer ends**

Using Timer Records

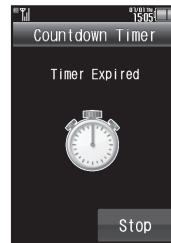
- After **1**, ➔ **Input History** ➔ ➔ **Select record** ➔ ➔ ➔ **From** **4**
- Resetting Countdown Timer**
- Stop countdown and**

Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press or . (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.

Opening World Clock

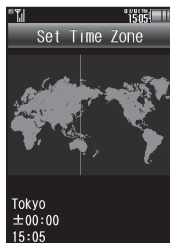
- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Clock/Gauge** ➔ **World Clock** ➔



Local Time
Zone

World Time
Zone

- 2



Set Time Zone Window

- 3 **Select area** ➔

- 4 ➔ **Standby returns**

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)

[Set Time Zone Window]

■ To cancel, press .

Adding Custom Time Zone

[Set Time Zone Window] ➔ Enter

city name ➔ ➔ + or - ➔ ➔

Enter time difference ➔

Opening World Clock in Standby

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔

- 2 **Standby Display** ➔

- 3 **Clock/Calendar** ➔

- 4 **World Clock (L), etc.** ➔

- 5 ➔ **Standby returns**

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** →



Hour Minder Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →

- 3 **Select Time** →



- 4 **Select hour** → (□/✓) → **Complete selection** →

- 5 → **Saved**

- 6 → **Standby returns**

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

In 2, **Advanced** → → **Volume:** → → **Adjust level** → → → **From**

Changing Hour Minder Duration

In 2, **Advanced** → → **Duration:** → → **Select time** → → → **From**

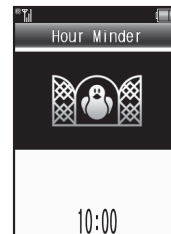
■ For custom Duration, select **Other**.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours

In 4, → **Check All** or **Uncheck All** →

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.
- **Incoming Calls**
- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

- 1 In Hour Minder menu, **Switch On/Off** → → **Off** → →

Advanced

- Changing Hour Minder tone/video
- Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time
- Changing illumination settings
- Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode
- Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.11-52)

Using Pedometer

Getting Started

- Count based on a pace of approximately 100 steps per minute over even terrain.
- Accuracy may be affected by course, terrain, walking style, etc.
- Avoid holding the handset; use a body worn case or a strap, or place handset inside a pocket or bag.
 - Avoid sudden/erratic movements.
- Steps are not counted in the following cases:
 - While handset is off
 - For the first few steps
 - While handset vibrates
- Handset use may affect accuracy.
- Weight and pace entry required to view full Pedometer data.
- Use Pedometer only as a rough guide.

Adjusting Counter Sensitivity

- **Tools** → **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → **Settings** → **Step Sensitivity** → **Select option**
 - Select **Low** when steps seem overcounted; select **High** when they seem undercounted.

Saving Body Information

- 1 **Tools** → **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer**



Pedometer Window

- If Pedometer is disabled, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press **Yes**.

- 2 **Settings** → **Body Info.**



Body Info Menu

- 3 **Height** → Enter height

- 4 **Weight** → Enter weight

- 5 **Pace** → **Yes or No**
 - Choose **Yes** to enter pace automatically based on height.

- 6 Enter pace

Editing Body Information

- [Body Info Menu] **Select item** → Enter value
 - For **Pace**, automatic calculation confirmation appears (when height is entered).

Enabling Pedometer

- 1 In Pedometer window, **Pedometer On**

Disabling Pedometer

- [Pedometer Window] **Pedometer Off**

Viewing Step Count Records

1 In Pedometer window,



Steps Window

- Press to toggle Daily/Hourly view.
- Press or to scroll down or up by one page.

2 Select time/date

- Hourly/daily step counts appear.

3 **Pedometer window returns**

Pedometer Window Tabs

- Press to open Exercise and then Calories.

Resetting Today's Step Count

[Pedometer Window] **Reset**

Day's Data

Resetting Log

[Steps Window] **Walk Data**

Reset

- Today's data is also reset.

Setting Targets

Information window opens, etc. when target is achieved for these items:

Steps	Walking Time
Exercise	Calories
Distance	Fat burned

1 In Pedometer window, **Settings** **Target** 2 **Target Settings** 3 **Select item** **Enter value/time**

- Other target settings may consequently change.

Editing Targets

[Pedometer Window] **Settings**

Target **Target**

Settings **Select item**

Enter value/time

When Target is Achieved

- A tone sounds and Information window opens. (Select **Goal Achievement** and press to open Pedometer Calendar.) Follow these steps to mute achievement tone:

[Pedometer Window] **Settings**

Target **Goal**

Announce **Off**

About Exercise (Ex)

- Ex and MET indicate amount and intensity of physical activity, respectively. Ex for walking is calculated by multiplying 3 METs by walking duration (hour).

Advanced

- Using Pedometer Calendar
- Checking accumulated data
- Resetting accumulated data
- Setting daily step count reset time
- Customizing achievement notice (P.11-52 - 11-53)

Using Compass

Opening Compass

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔
- Clock/Gauge** ➔ **Compass**
- ➔



Compass Window

- Compass opens; use as a rough guide.

Adjusting Compass

- 1 In Compass window, ➔
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Compass Indicator

- When map is open, compass indicator appears; follow these steps to hide it:
 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Clock/Gauge**
 ➔ **S! GPS Navi** ➔ ➔ **NAVI**
Settings ➔ ➔ **Compass Indicator**
 ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔

Using S! GPS Navi

Use this GPS navigation service to pinpoint current location, find routes to destinations, and more.

- Provide current location to administrator upon request.
- Available in clamshell open or Viewer position.

Precautions

- Location Information accuracy may be affected when GPS satellite/radio station signal reception is poor. Use S! GPS Navi under the open sky.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from the provided Location Information.

Positioning

- Pinpoints current location using signals transmitted from GPS satellites.

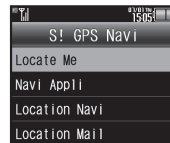
Location Information Accuracy

- Probable distance from the actual position is classified into three accuracy levels, from level 1 (low) to 3 (high), indicated by the number of 📶s.
- A confirmation appears when accuracy level is 1 or 2; follow these steps:

Yes or No ➡ ●

Starting Navi-Appli

- 1** ● ➡ **Tools** ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ **Clock/Gauge** ➡ **S! GPS Navi** ➡ ●



S! GPS Navi Menu

- 2** **Navi Appli** ➡ ●
- To disable confirmation, press ☹ before ☺.

- 3** **Yes** ➡ ●

Opening Navi Appli List


[S! GPS Navi Menu] **Navi Appli List** ➡ ●

- To activate Navi Appli, select one and press ●.

Selecting a Navi-Appli for S! GPS Navi

[S! GPS Navi Menu] **NAVI Settings** ➡ ● ➡ **Select Navi Appli** ➡ ● ➡ **Select application** ➡ ●


Opening Location Log

- 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **Location Logs** ➡ ●
- 2 **Select record** ➡ ●
 - Details appear.
- 3  ➡ **List returns**

Pinpointing Current Location

- 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **Locate Me** ➡ ●



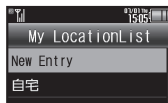
- To disable confirmation, press  before 2.
- 2 **Yes** ➡ ● ➡ **Positioning starts**
 - Map of your current location appears.

Using My Location


Saving Location Information

Follow these steps to save current location as a new entry:


- 1 In S! GPS Navi menu, **My Location List** ➡ ●



My LocationList Menu

- 2 **New Entry** ➡ ●
- 3 **Name** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ●
- 4 **Location Info** ➡ ●
- 5 **From Current Loc.** ➡ ● ➡ **Positioning complete**
- 6 ●
 - When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose **No** and press ● to proceed to 7.
- 7 


Saving as Home

In 2, **自宅** ➡ ● ➡ **From** 4
Saving from Location Log
 In 5, **From Location Logs** ➡ ● ➡
Select record ➡ ● ➡ 


Opening Entries

- 1 In My LocationList menu, **select entry** ➡ ●
- 2 **Location Info** ➡ ●
 - Details window opens.
- 3  ➡ **Details window closes**

Deleting Entries

- 1 In My LocationList menu, **select entry**
- 2  ➡ **Delete** ➡ ● ➡ **Yes** ➡ ●

Advanced

-  ● Sending current location via mail ● Changing map source URL ● Disabling positioning ● Selecting Location Information transmission option ● Using My Location & Location Log ● Saving Location Log records to My Location ● Deleting Location Log records (P.11-53)

Using Ichi Navi (Japanese)

Locate other S! GPS Navi-compatible handset users or lost handset.

- Ichi Navi requires a separate contract and initial settings.
- If Double Number is active, service uses Line A regardless of usage mode setting.
- For more about Ichi Navi, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-24).

1 In S! GPS Navi menu, *Location Navi* ➡ ●

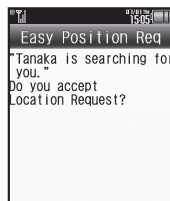
- Handset connects to the Internet.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Providing Location Information

Provide current location to administrator upon request.

- Location may be provided automatically upon administrator's request without confirmation.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43).

1 Location Information request arrives



- A confirmation appears. (Message shown above is for reference only.)

2 (provide) or (reject)

Information

Information window opens after your location is provided manually (by pressing (provide)) upon Location Information request or automatically upon administrator's request. Select the item and press (provide) to open log.

Advanced

- Suppressing Information window after sending Location Information automatically (P.11-54)

Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)
Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)
Microsoft® Word (.doc)
Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Downloaded files are also supported.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.17-25).

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Document Viewer** ➔

2 **Select file** ➔

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)

In open file, (Long) ➔ **Specify portion** ➔ ➔ **Zoom Out or Zoom In** ➔

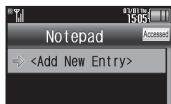
Key Assignments

View Whole Page	
Scroll	
View Upper Left	
Toggle Full Screen View On/Off	
View Upper Right	
Zoom Out	
Continuous Zoom Out	(Long) (Long)
View Center	
Zoom In	
Continuous Zoom In	(Long)
View Lower Left	
Jump to Page	
View Lower Right	
Open Help	
Next Page	
Previous Page	
Fit Width	
Rotate 90 Degrees	

Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Notepad** ➔



Notepad List

- 2 **<Add New Entry>** ➔
- 3 **Enter text** ➔
- 4 **Select Category** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Saved**

Sorting Entries Temporarily

[Notepad List]

- Press to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

Changing Landscape Notepad List View

- [Notepad List] **Select entry** ➔ ➔ **Setting/Manage** ➔ ➔ **Landscape Display** ➔ ➔ **Select option** ➔

Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

- [Text Entry Window] ➔ **Notepad** ➔ ➔ **Call Notepad** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔

- Not available in Notepad text entry window.

Opening Notepad

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔
 - Text appears.
- 2 ➔ **List returns**

Deleting Entries

■ One Entry

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔
- 2 **Delete Item** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

■ Selected Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔ ➔ **Setting/Manage** ➔
- 2 **Multiple Selection** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔ (☐ / ☒) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔
- 3 **Delete** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Unchecking All

In , **Uncheck All** ➔

■ All Entries

- 1 In Notepad list, select entry ➔ ➔ **Setting/Manage** ➔
- 2 **Delete All** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

- Editing Notepad
- Searching text within all entries
- Inserting Notepad text into message text
- Sending entries via S! Mail
- Creating text files
- Importing text files
- Checking memory status
- Opening properties (P.11-54)

Using ASCII Art

Inserting ASCII Art

- 1 In message text entry window, ➔ **Call ASCII Art** ➔

- 2 Select entry ➔



Previewing ASCII Art

- In , select entry ➔
- Press to insert ASCII Art.

Editing Entries

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **ASCII Art** ➔



ASCII Art List

- 2 Select entry ➔ ➔ **Edit** ➔

Opening Entries

- In , select entry ➔ ➔ **View** ➔

Adding New Entries

- In , <Empty> ➔ ➔ **Create ASCII Art** ➔

Deleting Entries

- 1 In ASCII Art list, select entry ➔ ➔ **Delete** ➔

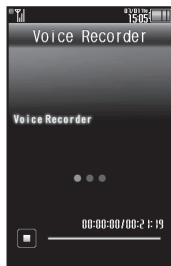
- 2 Yes ➔

Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

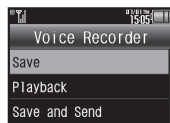
1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Voice Recorder** ➔ ●



Recording Window

2 ● ➔ **Recording starts**

3 ● ➔ **Recording ends**



- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

4 **Save** ➔ ●

Play Before Saving

In 4, **Playback** ➔ ● ➔ **Playback starts** ➔ ● ➔ **Playback stops**

Starting Over

In 4, ● ➔ **From** 2

Playback

1 In recording window, ● ➔ **Ring Songs-Tones** ➔ ●

2 **Select file** ➔ ●

Playing Files via Data Folder

● ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ● ➔ **Ring Songs-Tones** ➔ ● ➔ **Select file** ➔ ●

Playback Operations

Volume Control	●
Pause/Resume	●
Stop	●

Advanced

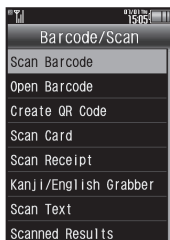
- Saving longer recordings
- Sending Voice files via S! Mail
- Switching storage media (P.11-54)

Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

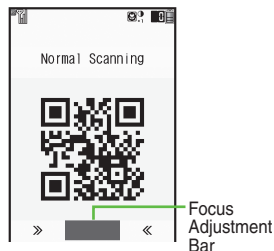
Some barcodes may not be scanned.

- 1** ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ●



- 2** **Scan Barcode** ➔ ●

- 3** **Frame barcode in center of Display**



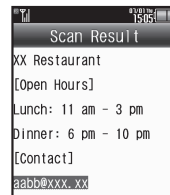
Scan Window

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

- 4** ● ➔ **Scan starts**

- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
- To cancel, press ⏏.

- 5** **Tone sounds ➔ Scan results appear**



Split Data

- After scanning, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over

After ⏏, ⏏ ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ From 3

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	⏏
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	⦿
Open Help	0

Advanced

- Scanning during text entry ● Scanning continuously ● Reading saved barcode images ● Saving scan results ● Saving to Notepad ● Saving linked info to Phone Book ● Opening saved scan results ● Using linked info ● Using images as Wallpaper ● Saving images & melodies ● Copying text (And more on P.11-55 - 11-56)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

Phone Book	My Details
Text Input	Ring Songs/Tones
Pictures	Notepad

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan** →
- 2 **Create QR Code** →
- 3 **Data Folder** →
- 4 **Select folder** → → **Select file or entry** →
 - QR Code is created.
- 5
 - QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries

In , **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** → →

From My Details

In , **My Details** → → →

From Entered Text

In , **Text Input** → → **Enter text** → →

Switching Storage Media

In , → **Save to** → → **Phone or Memory Card** → →

Attaching to S! Mail

In , → **Send As Message** → → **Complete message** →

Incoming Calls

• QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ●

2 **Scan Card** ➔ ●

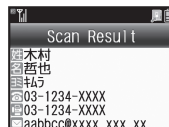
3 **Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

4 ●
● To cancel, press **Y**.

5 ● ➔ **Scan results appear**



6 ● ➔ **Y**
● New Phone Book entry is saved.

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:

Yes ➔ ●

Switching Storage Media

After **5**, **Y** ➔ **Save to** ➔ ● ➔ ●

Select storage media ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ●

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture

After **5**, **Y** ➔ **Add Image** ➔ ● ➔ ●

On ➔ ● ➔ **5**

Starting Over

After **5**, **Y** ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔ **From** **5**

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	#
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	0

Advanced

- Saving to Notepad ● Pasting to message text ● Copying text (P.11-57)

Scanning Text

Scan text and save it to Notepad, etc.

Available Modes:

Full	Capture text in full screen and scan a selected line
Line	Capture a few lines of text and scan a selected line

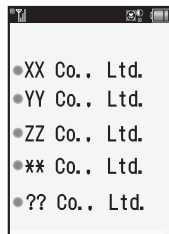
- To toggle mode, press in scan window.
- Some text may not be scanned.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔

2 **Scan Text** ➔

- To change mode, press in scan window.

3 **Frame text in center of Display**



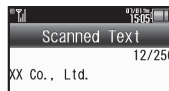
Scan Window

4 ➔ **Scan starts**

- To cancel, press .

5 **Select line** ➔ ➔ **Scan results appear**

6



7 ➔ **Notepad** ➔

Correcting Text Type

After , ➔ **Change Mode** ➔

➔ **Select type** ➔ ➔ From

Editing Scanned Text

After , ➔ **Select/Edit** ➔

Select character ➔ Select alternative from list or edit directly ➔ From

Starting Over

In , ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ From

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

Advanced

- Scanning and pasting during text entry
- Scanning more text
- Saving scan results
- Saving linked info to Phone Book
- Opening saved scan results
- Using linked info
- Pasting to message text
- Copying text (P.11-57 - 11-58)

Using Kanji/English Grabber

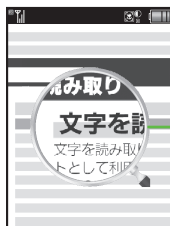
Scan a kanji compound or English word and look it up in dictionaries.

Some kanji/English words may not be scanned.

1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ●
Doc./Rec. ➔ **Barcode/Scan**
 ➔ ●

2 **Kanji/English Grabber** ➔ ●

3 **Frame word in Loupe**



Loupe

Scan Window

4 ●

- Scanned word appears with reading (for kanji) or meaning (for English).

5 ●

- If there is only one search result, definition/translation window opens; omit ⑤.

6 **Select word, etc.** ➔ ●

- Definition/translation window opens.

Starting Over

In ⑤, ⑦ ➔ From ③

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	③
Switch to Photo Camera	⑦
Focus Lock	⌂
Zoom In/Out	⬇️⬆️⬆️⬆️
Mobile Light On/Off	⌘
Adjust Brightness	☀️
Open Help	0

Advanced

- Scanning and pasting during text entry (P.11-58)

Calendar

View Settings

Changing default view	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → ● → <i>Default View</i> → ● → Select type → ●</p>
Jumping to specified date	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → → Enter date → ●</p>
Changing date color	<p>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → See below</p> <p>By Days of the Week</p> <p> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → ● → <i>Set Color</i> → ● → <i>By Week</i> → ● → Select day → ● → Select color → ●</p> <p>By Date</p> <p>Select date → → Select color → ●</p> <p>• Not available in 6Month View.</p> <p>Resetting "By Date" Colors</p> <p> → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → ● → <i>Set Color</i> → ● → <i>Reset Color</i> → ● → Select option → ● → Yes → ●</p>
Selecting task view option	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → → <i>Calendar Settings</i> → ● → <i>Tasks View</i> → ● → Select option → ●</p>
Adding stamps (1Month/3Month View)	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → → Select stamp → ●</p>
Hiding schedules	<p>● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → <i>Secret:</i> → ● → On → ● → </p>

Saving additional holidays

Start Here ● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Set Holiday* → ● → → Private → See below

Adding Holidays

<Empty> → ● → Enter name → ● → Enter date → ● → Select frequency → ● →

Editing Added Holidays

Select holiday → → *Edit* → ● → *Name:* → ● → Enter name → ● → *Date:* → ● → Enter date → ● → Select frequency → ● →

Hiding/showing holidays

● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Set Holiday* → ● → → Private or Public → Select holiday → ● (/✓)

Saving/Editing Schedules

Setting Location

● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ● → Select entry → ● → *Location:* → ● → Enter location → ● →

Creating Categories

Start Here ● → Tools → ● → In PIM/Life menu, *Calendar* → ● → → *Calendar Settings* → ● → *Set Category* → ● → See below

Renaming Categories













Select Category → ● → *Edit Category Name* → ● → Enter name → ●









Changing Icons

Select Category → ● → *Change Icon* → ● → Select Pictogram → ●

Resetting

→ *Reset Settings* → ● → Yes → ●

Saving repetitive schedules	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Repeat: ➔ ● ➔ Select frequency ➔ ● ➔ Enter repeat time ➔ ● ➔ </p> <p>• Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>.</p>
Saving S! Friend's Status information	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ S! Friend's Status: ➔ ● ➔ Link Setting: ➔ ● ➔ Linked ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Availability Answer Status: ➔ ● ➔ Edit ➔  ➔  ➔ </p> <p>• Set Category first.</p> <p>Comment Comment: ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ● ➔  ➔  ➔ </p> <p>• Set Category first.</p>
Editing entries	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving schedules ➔ </p>
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Alarm: ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔  ➔ </p> <p>• Select start point if required.</p> <p>Duration Duration: ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ● ➔  ➔ </p> <p>• For custom Duration, select Other and press ●.</p>

Changing Alarm volume	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔  ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ Alarm Volume: ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ● ➔</p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔  ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ Vibration: ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● ➔</p>
Changing illumination settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔  ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ Effect Illumination: ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Link to Sound ➔ ● ➔ </p> <p>Changing Illumination Pattern Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ● ➔ </p> <p>• Light color is unselectable for some patterns.</p> <p>Changing Key Illumination Pattern Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ </p> <p>• Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to Link to Sound.</p> <p>Disabling Illumination Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ● ➔ </p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔  ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ For Manner Mode: ➔ ● ➔ Ring ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔</p>

■ Managing Schedules

Searching entries	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → See below</p> <p>By Part of Subject <input type="text"/> → Enter text →</p> <p>By Category <input type="text"/> → Select Category →</p>
	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → → Select date → Memory Status →</p>
	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → → Delete → All Appointments → → Yes →</p>
Checking memory status	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → → Select date → Memory Status →</p>
Deleting all entries	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → → Delete → All Appointments → → Yes →</p>
Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → See below</p> <p>Within One Week Select date → Delete → All This Week → Yes →</p> <p>Up to the End of Previous Week Select date → Delete → Up to Last Week → Yes →</p>
Deleting entries by specifying month (1Month/3Month/6Month View)	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Calendar → See below</p> <p>Within One Month Select date → Delete → All This Month → Yes →</p> <p>Up to the End of Previous Month Select date → Delete → Up to Last Month → Yes →</p> <p>• Not available in 6Month View.</p>

Deleting entries in six months (6Month View)

→ **Tools** → In PIM/Life menu, **Calendar** → **Delete** → **All This 6Months** → **Yes** →

Tasks

■ Task List

Hiding tasks	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Tasks → → Select task → Edit → Secret: → → On →</p>
--------------	---

■ Saving/Editing Tasks

Editing tasks	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Tasks → → Select task → Edit → Select item → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks →</p>
Setting priority	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Tasks → → Select task → Edit → Priority: → Select priority →</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Tasks → Select task → Edit → Alarm: → See below</p> <p>Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → → Select tone/file → • Select start point if required.</p> <p>Duration Duration: → Select time →</p>
Changing Alarm volume	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Life menu, Tasks → → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level →</p>

Selecting Vibration option	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ Vibration: ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●</p>
Changing illumination settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ Effect Illumination: ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Link to Sound ➔ ● ➔ ☰</p> <p>Changing Illumination Pattern Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ● ➔ ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Light color is unselectable for some patterns. <p>Changing Key Illumination Pattern Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ ☰</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to Link to Sound. <p>Disabling Illumination Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ● ➔ ☰</p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Alarm Settings ➔ ● ➔ For Manner Mode: ➔ ● ➔ Ring ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>

Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Find ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>By Part of Subject By Subject ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ●</p> <p>By Due Date By Due Date ➔ ● ➔ Enter date ➔ ●</p>
Sorting tasks by priority	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Sort ➔ ● ➔ Priority ➔ ●</p>
Checking memory status	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Memory Status ➔ ●</p>
Deleting all tasks	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Tasks ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ All Tasks ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>

Alarms

Editing entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Alarms ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➔ ● ➔
Saving entry name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Alarms ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Subject: ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● ➔
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Alarms ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Assign Tone/Video: ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ • Select start point if required.</p> <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video Customized Screen ➔ ● ➔ </p>
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Alarms ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Vibration: ➔ ● ➔ On or Link to Sound ➔ ● ➔ • Select Link to Sound to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Changing illumination settings

Start Here ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, **Alarm** ➔ ● ➔ **Select entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Effect Illumination:** ➔ ● ➔ See below

Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination
Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ **Link to Sound** ➔ ● ➔ ➔

Changing Illumination Pattern
Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ● ➔ **Select color** ➔ ● ➔ ➔
 • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Key Illumination Pattern
Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ● ➔ ➔
 • Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to **Link to Sound**.

Disabling Illumination
Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ● ➔ ➔

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, **Alarms** ➔ ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **For Manner Mode** ➔ ● ➔ **Ring** ➔ ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●

Activating Alarm based on World Clock time

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, **Alarms** ➔ ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Link to World Clk** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

Wakeup TV	
Editing entries	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Wakeup TV ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Wakeup TV ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Assign Tone/Video: ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ • Select start point if required.</p> <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video Customized Screen ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Changing illumination settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Wakeup TV ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Effect Illumination: ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Link to Sound ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ ➔ Ⓜ</p> <p>Changing Illumination Pattern Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ ➔ Ⓜ • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.</p> <p>Changing Key Illumination Pattern Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ ➔ Ⓜ • Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to Link to Sound.</p> <p>Disabling Illumination Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ ➔ Ⓜ</p>

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Wakeup TV ➔ ● ➔ For Manner Mode ➔ ● ➔ Ring ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
---	---

Household Accounts

Renaming icon labels	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Household Accounts ➔ ● ➔ Select manual input panel ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Shops Shop ➔ ● ➔ Select icon ➔ ☒ ➔ Enter name ➔ ●</p> <p>Payment Methods Paid ➔ ● ➔ Select icon ➔ ☒ ➔ Enter name ➔ ●</p> <p>Categories Category Change ➔ ● ➔ Select icon ➔ ☒ ➔ Enter name ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Importing Household Accounts data ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Household Accounts ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Import All ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● • Current Household Accounts data is overwritten.</p>
	<p>Exporting Household Accounts data ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Life menu, Household Accounts ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Export All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● • Data is exported as a CSV file and saved to handset Data Folder (Other Documents). • Files are saved to Memory Card, if inserted.</p>

Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, ➔ <i>Copy</i> ➔
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calculator</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Money Converter</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Exchange Rate</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Domestic or Foreign</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Enter rate</i> ➔
Converting currencies	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Calculator</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Enter amount of money</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Money Converter</i> ➔ ➔ <i>To Domestic or To Foreign</i> ➔ • Set Exchange Rate first.

Expenses Memo

Changing Category of saved entry	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select list</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select entry</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select Category</i> ➔
Changing amount	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select list</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select entry</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Change Amount</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Edit</i> ➔
Renaming Categories	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Expenses Memo</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Edit Category</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select Category</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Enter name</i> ➔

Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Osaifu-Keitai</i> ➔ ➔ <i>IC Card Settings</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Balance Info</i> ➔ ➔ <i><Empty></i> ➔ ➔ <i>Lifestyle-Appli or SI Appli</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select application</i> ➔ • For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications. • Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Osaifu-Keitai</i> ➔ ➔ <i>IC Card Settings</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Balance Info</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select application</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Move</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select target location</i> ➔
Removing applications from Balance Info list	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Osaifu-Keitai</i> ➔ ➔ <i>IC Card Settings</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Balance Info</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select application</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔
Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Osaifu-Keitai</i> ➔ ➔ <i>IC Card Settings</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Interface Settings</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Select item</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔
Opening IC Card properties	➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ➔ In PIM/Life menu, <i>Osaifu-Keitai</i> ➔ ➔ <i>IC Card Settings</i> ➔ ➔ <i>IC Card Status</i> ➔

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** → ● → **Advanced** → ● → **Assign Tone/Video:** → ● → **Select folder** → ● → **Select tone/file** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚
- Select start point if required.

Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** → ● → **Advanced** → ● → **Vibration:** → ● → **On or Link to Sound** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚
- Select **Link to Sound** to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Changing illumination settings

- Start Here** ● → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** → ● → **Advanced** → ● → **Effect Illumination:** → ● → **See below**

- Setting Alarm Tone to Control Illumination**
Switch On/Off → ● → **Link to Sound** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚ → ⌚

- Changing Illumination Pattern**
Pattern/Color → ● → **Select pattern** → ● → **Select color** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚ → ⌚
- Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

- Changing Key Illumination Pattern**
Key Pattern → ● → **Select pattern** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚
- Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to **Link to Sound**.

- Disabling Illumination**
Switch On/Off → ● → **Off** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚ → ⌚

Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** → ● → **Advanced** → ● → **For Manner Mode:** → ● → **Ring** → ● → **Yes** → ● → ⌚

Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Hour Minder** → ● → **Advanced** → ● → **Link to World Clk:** → ● → **On** → ● → ⌚ → ⌚

Pedometer

Using Pedometer Calendar

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → ● → ⌚ → **Select date** → ●
- Degree of achievement appears.
 - Press **X** or **#** to view previous or next month.

Checking accumulated data

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → ● → ☐ → **Accumulated Data** → ●
- Change in body information is reflected in the data.

Resetting accumulated data

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → ● → ☐ → **Accumulated Data** → ● → ☐ → **Reset Walk Data** → ● → **Yes** → ●
- Averages are also reset.

Setting daily step count reset time

- → **Tools** → ● → ⌚ **Clock/Gauge** → **Pedometer** → ● → ☐ → **Settings** → ● → **Count Reset Time** → ● → **Enter time** → ● → **Yes** → ●

Customizing achievement notice	Start Here → Tools → Clock/Gauge → Pedometer → Settings → Target → Goal Announce → On → See below
	Changing Tone Goal Sound → Select pattern
	Changing Tone Volume Goal Volume → Adjust level
	Selecting Vibration Option Vibration → Select option
	Changing Duration Duration → Select time • For custom Duration, select Other and press .

S! GPS Navi

Sending current location via mail	Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → Location Mail → Positioning complete → Complete message • When accuracy level is 1 or 2, choose No and press after positioning, then complete message.
Changing map source URL	Start Here → Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Map URL Settings → See below Adding URLs <Not set> → Enter URL Setting Destination URL Select URL Viewing/Editing/Deleting URLs Select URL → Display, Edit or Delete • Follow onscreen prompt.

Disabling positioning	Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Positioning Lock → On • Handset Code is required to re-select Off .
Selecting Location Information transmission option	Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → NAVI Settings → Send Location Info → Select option
Using My Location & Location Log	Start Here → Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → My Location List or Location Logs → Select entry or record → See below Opening Map Yes Showing Routes via Navi Appli Go to → Yes • Follow onscreen instructions. Inserting into Message Text As Msg. Text → Complete message Saving to Phone Book Save to Ph.Book → As New Entry → Complete other fields • To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail .
Saving Location Log records to My Location	Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → Location Logs → Select record → Set as My Location → Enter name
Deleting Location Log records	Tools → Clock/Gauge → S! GPS Navi → Location Logs → Select record → Delete or Delete All → Yes • Omit record selection step when deleting all records.

Suppressing
Information window
after sending
Location Information
automatically

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Clock/Gauge* → *SI GPS Navi* → ● → *NAVI Settings* → ● → *Inform Location* → ● → *Do not Show* → ●

Notepad

Editing Notepad

Start Here ● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *See below*

Editing Text

Edit Text → ● → *Edit* → ●

Changing Category

Change Category → ● → *Select Category* → ●

Searching text
within all entries

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Search* → ● → *Enter text* → ●

Inserting Notepad
text into message
text

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Send* → ● → *As Message Text* → ● → *SI Mail or SMS* → ● → *Complete message* → ☑
 • SI Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Sending entries via
SI Mail

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Send* → ● → *Via Message* → ● → *Complete message* → ☑

Creating text files

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Setting/Manage* → ● → *Create Text File* → ● → *Enter name* → ● → *Save here* → ●

Importing text files

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Setting/Manage* → ● → *Import Text File* → ● → *Select file* → ●

Checking memory
status

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Setting/Manage* → ● → *Memory Status* → ●

Opening properties

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Notepad* → ● → *Select entry* → ☰ → *Details* → ●

Voice Recorder

Saving longer
recordings

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Voice Recorder* → ● → ☰ → *Record Time* → ● → *Extended Voice* → ● → ● → *Recording starts* → ● → *Recording ends*
 • Insert Memory Card to record in *Extended Voice* mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)

Sending Voice files
via SI Mail

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Voice Recorder* → ● → ● → *Recording starts* → ● → *Recording ends* → *Save and Send* → ● → *Complete message* → ☑
 • Available in *For Message* mode.

Switching storage
media

● → *Tools* → ● → ⌂ *Doc./Rec.* → *Voice Recorder* → ● → ☰ → *Save Recording to* → ● → *Select option* → ●
 • Available in *For Message* mode.
 • Set to *Ask Each Time* to select media after every recording.

Scan Barcode	
Scanning during text entry	<p>Start Here In a text entry window, </p> <p>Pasting All Scan Results</p> <p> </p>
	<p>Pasting a Part of Scan Results</p> <p> </p>
Scanning continuously	<p> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Choose Yes to continue scanning or No and press to view scan results.
Reading saved barcode images	<p> </p>
Saving scan results	<p> </p>
Saving to Notepad	<p> </p>

Saving linked info to Phone Book

- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.
- When **MEMORY:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.

Opening saved scan results

- Select a file and press to rename files, open properties or delete files.
- Some files may not open.

Using linked info

Start Here

Dialing Numbers

Select phone number

Sending Messages

Select mail address

- When **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Mail Composition window. (**SUBJECT:** or **BODY:** must be included to enter subject/message text.)

Accessing Internet Sites

Select URL

Using images as Wallpaper	<p> → Tools → → Doc./Rec. → → Barcode/Scan → → Scan Barcode → → Frame barcode in center of Display → → Select image → → Set as Wallpaper → → Vertical or Horizontal </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Saving images & melodies	<p> → Tools → → Doc./Rec. → → Barcode/Scan → → Scan Barcode → → Frame barcode in center of Display → → Select file → → To Data Folder </p>
Opening or playing files	<p> → Tools → → Doc./Rec. → → Barcode/Scan → → Scan Barcode → → Frame barcode in center of Display → → Select file </p>
Using images for System Graphics	<p> → Tools → → Doc./Rec. → → Barcode/Scan → → Scan Barcode → → Frame barcode in center of Display → → Select image → → As System → → Select item → → Specify image area </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Pasting to message text	<p> → Start Here → → Tools → → Doc./Rec. → → Barcode/Scan → → Scan Barcode → → Frame barcode in center of Display → → Send Message → → See below </p> <p>All Text</p> <p> → S! Mail or SMS → → Complete message </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. <p>Selected Text</p> <p> → Select first character → → Highlight text range → → S! Mail or SMS → → Complete message </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	<p> → Start Here → → Tools → → Doc./Rec. → → Barcode/Scan → → Scan Barcode → → Frame barcode in center of Display → → See below </p> <p>Text</p> <p> → Copy → → Select first character → → Highlight text range </p> <p>Number, Address or URL</p> <p> → Select number, mail address or URL → → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL </p>

Scan Card	
Saving to Notepad	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Card ➔ ● ➔ Frame card in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Notepad ➔ ●</p>
Pasting to message text	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Card ➔ ● ➔ Frame card in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Send Message ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>All Text</p> <p>● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. <p>Selected Text</p> <p>☒ ➔ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Card ➔ ● ➔ Frame card in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Copy ➔ ● ➔ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ●</p>

Scan Text	
Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, ☒ ➔ Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ●</p>
Scanning more text	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Continue Part or Scan More ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Continue Part to enter additional text or Scan More to enter text after a line break.
Saving scan results	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ☒ ➔ Save ➔ ●</p>
Saving linked info to Phone Book	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ Select number or mail address ➔ ☒ ➔ Save to Ph.Book ➔ ● ➔ As New Entry ➔ ● ➔ Complete other fields ➔ Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.
Opening saved scan results	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scanned Results ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select a file and press ☒ to rename files, open properties or delete files. Some files may not open.

Using linked info	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Dialing Numbers Select phone number ➔ ● ➔ </p>
	<p>Sending Messages Select mail address ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
	<p>Accessing Internet Sites Select URL ➔ ●</p>
Pasting to message text	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Send Message ➔ ● ➔ See below</p>
	<p>All Text ● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ </p> <p>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</p>
	<p>Selected Text ➔ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ </p> <p>● S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.</p>

Copying text	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Text ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Text ➔ Copy ➔ ● ➔ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Number, Address or URL Select number, mail address or URL ➔ ➔ Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL ➔ ●</p>

Kanji/English Grabber


Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, ➔ Scan ➔ ● ➔ Kanji/English Grabber ➔ ● ➔ Frame word in Loupe ➔ ● ➔ Scan results appear ➔ ●</p>
--	--

Osaifu-Keitai®

? Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check  logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

? Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Wakeup TV

? TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

Voice Recorder

? Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

? Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

? Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

? Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

? Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

? Cannot read split QR Codes in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

? Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/ decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

? Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- In Line mode, adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

S! Quick News	12-2
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)	12-2
S! Information Channel	12-3
S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)	12-3
Content Downloads	12-4
Downloading Content (Japanese) ...	12-4
e-Books	12-5
Reading e-Books (Japanese)	12-5

S! Friend's Status	12-6
Using S! Friend's Status	12-6
S! Circle Talk	12-9
Using S! Circle Talk	12-9
Blog Tool	12-11
Blogging	12-11
Additional Functions	12-13
Troubleshooting	12-17

12

Entertainment



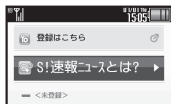
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.
Packet transmission fees apply (except when downloading via Wi-Fi).

Registering S! Quick News Items

1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ➔ **S! Quick News** ➔

2 **S! Quick News List** ➔



S! Quick News List

3 **登録はこちら** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

- Handset connects to the Internet.

4 **Select item** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

1 **In S! Quick News List, select item** ➔

- Title list appears.

2 **Select title** ➔

- Information appears.
- Press to return to title list, or to open next title.

Updating Items Manually

[S! Quick News List] **Select item** ➔

➔ **更新** ➔ ➔ **一件 or 全件** ➔

Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

Advanced

- Setting S! Quick News automatic update ● Checking update schedule ● Deleting S! Quick News items ● Resetting S! Quick News List ● Changing background image ● Accessing source sites ● Disabling image download (P.12-13)



S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Packet transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 **Entertainment** **S! Information Channel/Weather**



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel**
 - Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

- 1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel**
 - S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
 - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

- 2 **Standby returns**

Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]

What's New

Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu] **Back**

Issue **Select date**

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]

Weather Indicator **Manual**

Update **Yes**

Advanced

- Suppressing Information window for new received info ● Changing Display Size ● Changing scroll unit ● Copying text ● Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby ● Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates ● Suppressing Information window for weather updates (And more on P.12-13 - 12-14)



Downloading Content (Japanese)

Download media content via Yahoo! Keitai.

Via Free Content Providers

Download free Graphic Mail templates, e-Books, games, etc.

Content downloads are free, however, they require Internet connection incurring packet transmission fees (except when downloading via Wi-Fi).

1 **Entertainment**



Entertainment Menu

2 **Free Contents**

3 **Select provider**

- Handset connects to the Internet.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Via S! Contents Store

1 **In Entertainment menu, S! Contents Store**

- Handset connects to the Internet.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1 Entertainment



Entertainment Menu

2 **S! Contents Store**

- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

Note

- Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site ([シャープモバイルSH-web](#)) in Bookmarks; see P.6-9) for e-Books.

Downloading Free e-Books

In , **Free Contents**

Tada-Hon or Tada-Komi

- Follow onscreen instructions.

e-Book Viewer

Read XPDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **e-Book Viewer**

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

Digital Media Viewer

Read digital magazines and newspapers. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **Digital Media Viewer**

- Digital Media Viewer starts. Refer to the Digital Media Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, **BookSurfing**

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Advanced

- Copying text Opening non-945SH e-Books (Library) Using Library (P.12-14)



Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- Save and organize members in Groups.
- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set IP Service Setting to **On**.
- Set Connection status to **Online**.

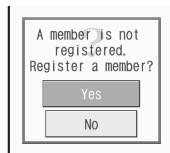
First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.



1 ● ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ●
➔ **S! Friend's Status** ➔ ●

2 **Yes** ➔ ●



3 **Yes** ➔ ●

4 **Phone Book** ➔ ●

5 **Select entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Select phone number** ➔ ●

- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

6 **Yes** ➔ ●

- Registration request is sent to the number.

When Request is Accepted

- An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry

In 4, **Add New Entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter phone number** ➔ ● ➔ 6

If IP Service Setting is Off

After 1, **On** ➔ ● ➔ **S! Friend's Status** ➔ ● ➔ **From** 2

Advanced

- Adding members
- Deleting members
- Moving members
- Renaming Groups
- Rejecting requests
- Updating manually
- Opening notices
- Sending My Details image (And more on P.12-15 - 12-16)



Opening Member Status

- 1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ➔ **S! Friend's Status** ➔ ➔



My Status

Member Status

- 2 ➔
- Member status details appear.

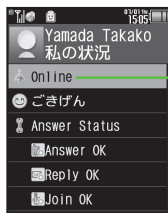
When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

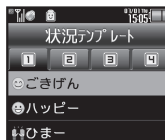
- 1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ➔ **S! Friend's Status** ➔ ➔ ➔



Connection Status

My Status Window

- 2 ➔ ➔ **Select Status, e.g., ごきげん** ➔



Status Template Window

- 3 ➔
- 4 ➔ **Select Availability, e.g., Answer OK** ➔ ➔
- 5 **<Add Comment>** ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔
- 6 ➔ **Update starts**

Changing Connection Status

[My Status Window] **Online (or Offline)** ➔ ➔

Changing Status Icon/Label

[Status Template Window] **Select Status** ➔ ➔ **Status Icon or Status Label** ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔

Changing Availability Settings at Once

In 4, **Answer Status** ➔ ➔ ➔ **From** ➔

Editing My Status Name

[My Status Window] ➔ **Edit Name** ➔ ➔

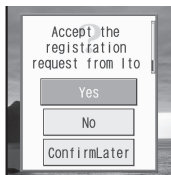
Avoiding Member Image Reception

[My Status Window] ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Reject** ➔



Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



1 Yes ➡ ●

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting

In 1, No ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For **Confirm Later**, Information window opens.

Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.



1 In Status Template window, ➡ New Entry ➡ ●

2 Enter name ➡ ●

3 <未定> ➡ ●

4 Status Icon ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●

5 Status Label ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ Y7

6 Repeat 3 - 5 ➡ Y7 ➡ Saved

Saving to Data Folder

[Status Template Window] ● Select template ➡ ● ➡ Save to DF ➡ ● ➡ Save here ➡ ●

Loading Templates via Data Folder

[Status Template Window] ● Add Template ➡ ● ➡ Select template ➡ ●

Renaming Templates

[Status Template Window] ● Select template ➡ ● ➡ Edit Temp. Name ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●



Advanced

- Resetting templates (P.12-15)

Using S! Circle Talk

Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

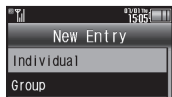
- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Packet transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.
- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

Registering Members

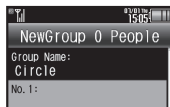
Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

- 1 **Entertainment** **S! Circle Talk**
 - When registering a member for the first time, member registration confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press , then skip ahead to 3.

- 2 **<Add New Entry>**



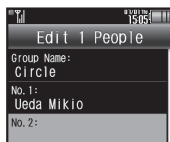
- 3 **Group** **Group Name:** **Enter name**



- 4 **Select number, e.g., No. 1:**

- 5 **Phone Book**

- 6 **Select entry** **Select phone number**



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
- Repeat 4 - 6 to add members.

- 7 **Saved**

Saving as Individuals

- In 3, **Individual** 5 - 5
- Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List
- In 5, **Members List** **Select member** 7
- Omit 7 when **Individual** is selected in 3.
- If IP Service Setting is *Off*
- After 1, **On** **S! Circle Talk** **From** 2

Advanced

- Editing individual members Editing Groups (P.12-16)



Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:

(First, set Connection status to *Online* (P.12-7).)

- 1 ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ ➔ **S! Circle Talk** ➔



- 2 **Select member or Group** ➔

- 3 ➔ **Transmission starts**

- S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
- Loudspeaker activates automatically.

Direct Entry

Enter phone number ➔ ➔ **Call**
S! Circle Talk ➔ ➔

S! Circle Talk Operations

■ Speaking

- 1 **Press and hold** **when**
Press and Hold **appears**
➔ **You have the floor**



- **:My Turn** appears when you have the floor.

- 2 **Keep holding** **to speak**
➔ **Release** ➔ **Floor is released**

- Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk

- Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming calls as needed.

Canceling Loudspeaker

During S! Circle Talk,

- To reactivate, follow these steps:
 ➔ **While message appears,**

■ Exiting S! Circle Talk

- 1 ➔ **Connection ends**
 - S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk

➔ **Select most recent S! Circle Talk record** ➔ ➔ **Rejoin Circle Talk** ➔

- Not available when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

- 1 **While handset is ringing/vibrating,** ➔ **S! Circle Talk starts**

- Alternatively, press .
- S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced

- Disabling Loudspeaker Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (P.12-16)



Blogging

Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

Saving Blog Details

Setup for Posting via Mail

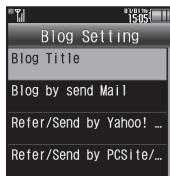
Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

- 1



Blog Tool Window

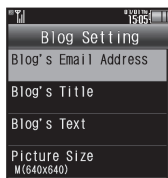
- 2



Blog Setting Menu

- 3 **Blog Title**

- 4 **Blog by send Mail**



- 5 **Blog's Email Address**

- 6

Saving Title/Text for Posts

After 5, **Blog's Title** or **Blog's Text**

- Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.

Setting Image Size for Posting

After 5, **Picture Size**

Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC sites, or both.

- 1 **In Blog Setting menu, Blog Title**

- 2 **Refer/Send by Yahoo! Keitai** or **Refer/Send by PC Site/Direct Browser**



- 3 **Blog's URL**

- 4 **Refer Blog's URL**

- 5

Advanced

Editing entries Deleting entries (P.12-16)



Posting to Blogs

Complete setup for posting via mail/Internet beforehand.

Posting via Mail

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➡ ●
- 2 *Blog by send Mail* ➡ ●
 - S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
 - Omit ② if no URL is saved for posting.
- 3 Complete message ➡ ●

Posting via the Internet

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➡ ●
- 2 *Blog by send Browser* ➡ ●
 - Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
 - Omit ② if no address is saved for posting.
 - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved

After ②, select browser ➡ ●

Opening Blog Page

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➡ ●
 - Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
 - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URLs for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Sites are Saved

After ①, select browser ➡ ●



S! Quick News

■ Opening/Updating Items

Setting S! Quick News automatic update	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Automatic Update ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ● ➤ Select update interval, <i>On or Off</i> ➤ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If a message appears, press ●. ● When selecting an item set to <i>Off</i>, a message appears. ● When Special is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated every four hours. ● When General is set to <i>On</i>, items are updated once a day. ● Updating items may incur high packet transmission fees. ● Only available in Japan.
Checking update schedule	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Check Schedule ➤ ●</p>
Deleting S! Quick News items	<p>Start Here ● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News List ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ☰ ➤ See below</p> <p>One Entry 一件 ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p> <p>All Entries 全件 ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>
Resetting S! Quick News List	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Delete S! Quick News Lists ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Not available during automatic updates.

■ Other

Changing background image	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Change Skin ➤ ● ➤ Select pattern ➤ ●</p>
Accessing source sites	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News List ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ● ➤ Select title ➤ ● ➤ Select linked title ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>
Disabling image download	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Quick News ➤ ● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Show Image ➤ ● ➤ Off ➤ ●</p>

S! Information Channel

■ Receiving Information

Suppressing Information window for new received info	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Information Channel/Weather ➤ ● ➤ Notification ➤ ● ➤ Off ➤ ●</p>
Requesting re-delivery	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Information Channel/Weather ➤ ● ➤ Get Latest Contents ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>

■ Information Pages

Changing Display Size	<p>On a page, ☰ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Display Size ➤ ● ➤ Select size ➤ ●</p>
Changing scroll unit	<p>On a page, ☰ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Scroll Unit ➤ ● ➤ Select unit ➤ ●</p>



Copying text	On a page, ➔ Copy Text ➔ ➔ Select first character ➔ ➔ Highlight text range ➔
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page, ➔ Save Items ➔ ➔ Select file ➔ ➔ Save ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ • Some files are saved automatically.
Opening page properties	On a page, ➔ Details ➔

Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Information Channel/Weather ➔ ➔ Weather Indicator ➔ ➔ Weather ➔
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Font Size ➔ ➔ Select size ➔
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Information Channel/Weather ➔ ➔ Weather Indicator ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Standby Setting ➔ ➔ Off ➔
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Information Channel/Weather ➔ ➔ Weather Indicator ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Icon Update ➔ ➔ Off ➔
Suppressing Information window for weather updates	➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Information Channel/Weather ➔ ➔ Weather Indicator ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Weather Notif. ➔ ➔ Off ➔

e-Books

Copying text	In open page, ➔ 文字列を北 - ➔ ➔ Select first character ➔ ➔ Highlight text range ➔
Opening non-945SH e-Books (Library)	➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ e-Book Viewer ➔ ➔ Select file ➔ • Some files may not open.
Using Library	Start Here ➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ e-Book Viewer ➔ ➔ See below
	Adding Folders ➔ New Folder ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔
	Switching Folders ➔ Switch Folders ➔ ➔ Select folder ➔
	Renaming Folders/Files Select folder/file ➔ ➔ Rename ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔
	Moving Files Select file ➔ ➔ Move ➔ ➔ Select folder ➔ ➔ Move here ➔
	Deleting Folders/Files Select folder/file ➔ ➔ Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
	Opening File Properties Select file ➔ ➔ Details ➔



S! Friend's Status

■ Members & Groups

Adding members	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ ● ➤ Select Group ➤ Add Member ➤ Select method ➤ Select entry or enter phone number ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>
Deleting members	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ ● ➤ Select Group ➤ Select member ➤ Registration Release ➤ Yes ➤ ● • Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.</p>
Moving members	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ ● ➤ Select Group ➤ Select member ➤ Change Group ➤ Select target Group ➤ ●</p>
Renaming Groups	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ ● ➤ Select Group ➤ Edit Group Name ➤ Enter name ➤ ●</p>
Rejecting requests	<p>Start Here ● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ Settings ➤ Request Reply ➤ See below</p> <p>Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers Confirm if Registered ➤ ● • Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically.</p> <p>Rejecting All Requests Always Ignore ➤ ● • Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.</p>

■ Status & Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ Settings ➤ Answer Status ➤ User Setting ➤ Select type ➤ ● ➤ Select Availability ➤ ● ➤</p>
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ Settings ➤ Status Setting ➤ Select template ➤ Select Status ➤ ● ➤ Status Icon ➤ Select Pictogram ➤ ● ➤ Status Label ➤ Enter text ➤ ● ➤</p>

■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	<p>Start Here ● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ 私の状況 ➤ Select Status ➤ See below</p> <p>One Template Select template ➤ Reset ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p> <p>All Templates Reset All ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>
---------------------	---

■ Member Status & Notices

Updating manually	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ Settings ➤ Status Update ➤ ●</p>
Opening notices	<p>● ➤ Entertainment ➤ ● ➤ S! Friend's Status ➤ Settings ➤ Status Notif. List ➤ Select notice ➤ ●</p>



■ My Details

Sending My Details image	● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>S! Friend's Status</i> → ● → ☹ → <i>Select Group</i> → <i>Select member</i> → ☹ → <i>Send Image</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●
	• Available when your handset number is saved in Phone Book on member's handset.

S! Circle Talk

■ Member List

Editing individual members	Start Here ● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>S! Circle Talk</i> → ● → <i>Select member</i> → ☹ → <i>See below</i>
	Replacing Members <i>Edit</i> → ● → ● → <i>Select method</i> → ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ●
	Deleting Members <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●
Editing Groups	Start Here ● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>S! Circle Talk</i> → ● → <i>Select Group</i> → ☹ → <i>See below</i>
	Editing Group Name/Members <i>Edit</i> → ● → <i>Select target</i> → ● → <i>Edit/enter</i> → ● → Y
	Deleting Group Members <i>Edit</i> → ● → <i>Select member</i> → ☹ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ● → Y
	Deleting Groups <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●

■ Settings

Disabling Loudspeaker	● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>S! Circle Talk</i> → ● → ☹ → <i>Loudspeaker</i> → ● → <i>Off</i> → ●
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>S! Circle Talk</i> → ● → ☹ → <i>Incoming Calls</i> → ● → <i>Voice Calls</i> or <i>Video Calls</i> → ● → <i>Accept Calls</i> → ●

Blog Tool

Editing entries	● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>Blog Tool</i> → ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ☹ → <i>Edit</i> → ● → <i>Select</i> <i>item</i> → ● → <i>Edit/enter</i> → ● → <i>SAVE</i> → Y
Deleting entries	● → <i>Entertainment</i> → ● → <i>Blog Tool</i> → ● → <i>Select entry</i> → ☹ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●



S! Quick News

? Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.

S! Friend's Status

? Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

? Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.

? Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.

? Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.

? Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk

? Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to *On*.

? S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Auto Join*.

? Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to *Join NG*.



Handset Security	13-2
Operations Security	13-2
Information Security.....	13-3

Function Control	13-4
Using Function Control.....	13-4
Additional Functions	13-5

13

Handset Security



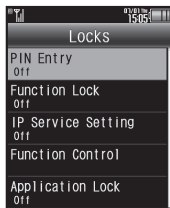
Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed (clamshell closed)
Once	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
At Power On	Lock when handset is powered on; Handset Code entry window opens

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks** ➔



Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock** ➔
- 3 **Select option** ➔

Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter
Handset Code ➔

Available Operations while Function Lock is Active

- Power handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is powered on.

- 1 **In Locks menu, PIN Entry** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 2 **On** ➔ ➔ **Enter PIN** ➔

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except powering handset on, and activates IC Card Lock. For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-24) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43).

Advanced

- Changing PIN Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message (P.13-5)



Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

Phone Book

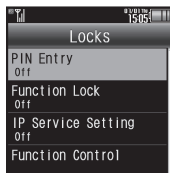
Mail

Calendar/Tasks

Notepad

Yahoo! Keitai

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Phone/** → **Locks** →



Locks Menu

- 2 **Application Lock** →

- 3 **Select item** → (✓)

For Phone Book, select **No Refer** (to hide entry names in message lists, Call Log, etc.) or **Refer** and press .

- 4 → **Enter Handset Code**
→

Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press .

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

- 1 In Locks menu, **History Lock** →

- 2 **Select item** → (✓)

- 3 → **Enter Handset Code**
→

Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press .

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

- 1 In Locks menu, **Show Secret Data** →

- 2 **On** → → **Enter Handset Code** →

Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

- 1 **Enter Handset Code** → **Shake handset left or right**
→

- Show Secret Data is canceled when handset is closed (clamshell closed) or Display goes dark in Standby.



Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	Attach File
Infrared	Wi-Fi
Bluetooth	Yahoo! Keitai
Memory Card	PC Site Browser
USB	IP Service
Digital TV	S! Appli
Messaging	Osaifu-Keitai
Voice Call (placing)	PC Mail
Video Call (placing)	Streaming
USIM (writing)	Flash®
S! Mail	Mobile Widget

■ When Accessing Restricted Functions

A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.

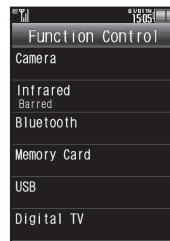


Message may not appear for some functions.

Checking Restriction Status

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks** ➔

2 **Function Control** ➔



- Restriction status appears for each function.

- A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43).



PIN Entry

Changing PIN

- ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Locks**
- ➔ ● ➔ **PIN Entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Change PIN** ➔ ●
- ➔ Enter current PIN ➔ ● ➔ Enter new PIN ➔
- ➔ Re-enter new PIN ➔ ●
- Activate PIN Entry first.

Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message

- Start Here** ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Phone/**
- ➔ **Locks** ➔ ● ➔ **Set Lock Message** ➔ ● ➔
- See below
- Saving Message**
- Message** ➔ ● ➔ Enter message ➔ ● ➔ Yes
- ➔ ●
- Checking Message**
- Check Message** ➔ ●
- Suppressing Message**
- Display Setting** ➔ ● ➔ **Don't Show** ➔ ●



Data Folder	14-2
Opening Files	14-3
Managing Files & Folders	14-4
Memory Card	14-5
Using Memory Card.....	14-5

Additional Functions	14-7
Troubleshooting.....	14-10

14

Data Folder & Memory Card



Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ Preset Folders

	Contents
Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to DCIM)
Ring Songs-Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications
Widget*	Widgets
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli*	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen*	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Checking Memory Status

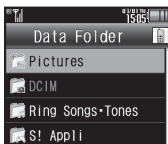
● ➡ **Data Folder** ➡ ● ➡ **Memory Status** ➡ ● ➡ **Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➡ ●

- The category **Others:** includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



Opening Files

1 ➔ Data Folder ➔



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press .

2 ➔

To open a sub folder, select it and press .



File List

3 ➔



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press .

Handling Open Images

- Press to enlarge, or press or to open next or previous image. Press to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

Attaching to Mail

After , select file ➔ ➔ **Send/ Blog** ➔ ➔ **As Message** ➔

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Copy Protected Files (or)

- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 ➔

2 **Slide Show** ➔

- Slide Show starts.

3 ➔ **Slide Show stops**

Changing Interval

After , ➔ **Speed** ➔ ➔ **Select speed** ➔

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press or to advance or reverse frame.

Note

- Backlight stays on during Slide Show; exit to save battery power.

Advanced

- Switching file list view Changing image quality Changing Slide Show settings Using files as Wallpaper Using files as ringtones Using files as ringvideos (And more on P.14-7 - 14-8)



Managing Files & Folders





Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

- 1  ➔ **Data Folder** ➔  ➔ **Select folder** ➔ 









File List

- 2  If **Download** is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to 4.
- 3 **Manage Items** ➔ 
- 4 **Create Folder** ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔ 





Moving/Copying Files

Some files may not be moved/copied.

- 1 In file list, select file ➔ 
- 2 **Move or Copy** ➔  ➔ **Phone or Memory Card** ➔ 
 - For still images, select a destination folder (**Pictures**, **Mail Art**, etc.) and press .



- 3 **Select folder** ➔ 
- 4 **Move here or Copy here** ➔ 

Selecting Multiple Files




- 1 In file list, 
- 2 **Select file** ➔ 
 - Repeat 2 as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with  and press .)

Hiding Folders



Restrict access to created folders.

- 1 In file list, select folder ➔ 
- 2 **Set Secret (Set Hidden for Memory Card)** ➔ 

Accessing Secret/Hidden Folders (Unlock Temporarily)

[File List]  ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 

Canceling Secret/Hidden

Unlock Secret/hidden folders temporarily and select target folder ➔  ➔ **Unset Secret (Unset Hidden for Memory Card)** ➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Renaming folders ● Opening file properties ● Renaming files ● Sorting files ● Deleting files & created folders ● Handling SVG files (P.14-8 - 14-9)

Using Memory Card

Use microSD/microSDHC Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 945SH.

- Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see P.17-24 "microSD Memory Card Compatibility."
- If inserted, captured images, downloads and other files save to Memory Card. (My Pictograms and Graphic Mail templates save to handset.)

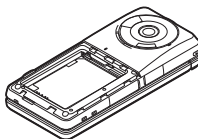
Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never power handset off or remove battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

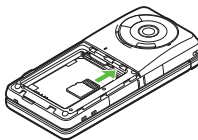
Inserting & Removing

First, power handset off.

1 Remove battery (P.17-4)

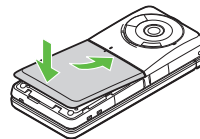


2 Insert card



- With terminal side up, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

3 Insert battery, then close Battery Cover (P.17-4)

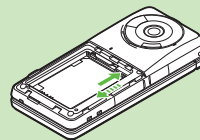


If Appears after Power On

- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

Removing Memory Card

- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1 **Settings** **Phone/** **Memory Card**

2 **Format Card** **Yes**

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3 **Yes**
• To cancel, choose **No** and press .

Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

Follow these steps to open files via Data Folder:

(Memory Card Data Folder opens first.)

1 **Data Folder**
• Memory Card Data Folder opens.

2 **Select folder**
To open a sub folder, select it and press .

3 **Select file**

Opening Handset Data Folder Files

After **1**, **Change to Phone**
 From **2**

Advanced

- Using HTML files on Memory Card (P.14-9)



File/Folder View Settings	
Switching file list view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Manage Items ➔ ● ➔ Change List View ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Changing image quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Slide Display (Picture Quality for Flash® files) ➔ ● ➔ Select quality ➔ ●
Changing transition effect when using	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Effect Type Settings ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ●
Changing Slide Show settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start Here ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☰ ➔ Slide Show ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ See below
	Playing Once Repeat ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
	Playing Music BGM Settings ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●
	Changing Music BGM Settings ➔ ● ➔ Play Ring Tones ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●
	Disabling Sharpening Kukkiri ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
	Setting Music to Control Illumination Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Link to Sound ➔ ● ➔

Changing Slide Show settings

Start Here ● ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☰ ➔ **Slide Show** ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ See below

Changing Illumination Pattern

Illumination ➔ ● ➔ **Pattern/Color** ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ● ➔ **Select color** ➔ ● ➔
 • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.

Changing Key Illumination Pattern

Illumination ➔ ● ➔ **Key Pattern** ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ● ➔
 • Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to **Link to Sound**.

Disabling Key Illumination

Illumination ➔ ● ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ● ➔

Hiding Softkeys

SW Guide Display ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Setting Backlight to Turn Off after a Period of Time

Always Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●
 • Choosing **Off** applies Display Backlight settings. (Display remains on during Slide Show regardless of Display Saving setting.)

Changing Image Transition Effect

Effect Type Settings ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ●

Using Data Folder Images in Transition Effect

EffectImageSettings ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ● ➔ Select image ➔ ● ➔ Specify image area or zoom in/out ➔ ●

Restoring Default Image

EffectImageSettings ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔ ●



Showing Softkeys in image view	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>SW Guide Display</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ ●
Disabling sharpening	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Kukkiri</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ ●

Using Files/Folders

Using files as Wallpaper	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Set as Wallpaper</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Vertical or Horizontal</i> ➔ ● ➔ ● • For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Using files as ringtones	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Set as Ringtone</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● • If prompted, enter ring time and press ●. • If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.
Using files as ringvideos	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Videos</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Set as Ring Video</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● • If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.
Saving Phone Book entries	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Save to Phone Book</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>As New Entry</i> ➔ ● ➔ Complete other fields ➔ ☐ • To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i> .

Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders

● ➔ *Data Folder* ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ●
 ➔ ☐ ➔ *Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice* ➔ ●

Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Manage Items</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Rename</i> ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● • Assign different names to folders within a layer.
Opening file properties	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Details</i> ➔ ●
Renaming files	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Manage Items</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Rename</i> ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●
Sorting files	● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Manage Items</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sort</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select method ➔ ●
Deleting files & created folders	<div>Start Here</div> ● ➔ <i>Data Folder</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ See below Single Files Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ● Folder & Files Within Select folder ➔ ☐ ➔ <i>Delete</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●



Handling SVG files	Start Here Data Folder Other Documents Select file See below
	Line Scroll
	Page Scroll (Up), (Down), (Right), (Left)
	Zoom (Zoom out), (Zoom in)
	Rotate (Counterclockwise), (Clockwise)
	Key Action Mode
	Default View

Memory Card

Using HTML files on Memory Card	Settings Phone/SD Memory Card SD Local Contents Select title
---------------------------------	---



Managing Files/Folders



Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)



Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.



Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 961 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.



Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, /, ?, # and " are not supported.



Wi-Fi	15-2
Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)	15-2
Registering Private Access Points ...	15-3
Using Public Wireless LAN Services ...	15-6
Infrared.....	15-7
Transferring Files via Infrared	15-8
Exchanging Contact Information...	15-10
IC Transmission	15-11
Transferring Files via IC Transmission	15-12
Bluetooth®	15-13
Transferring Files via Bluetooth® ...	15-14
External Device Connection	15-17
Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder.....	15-17

HDMI Connection.....	15-18
Connecting TV.....	15-18
Backup.....	15-20
Basics.....	15-20
Backup & Restore	15-21
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ...	15-22
About SAB.....	15-22
Using Sync Commands.....	15-24
Additional Functions	15-25
Troubleshooting.....	15-30

15

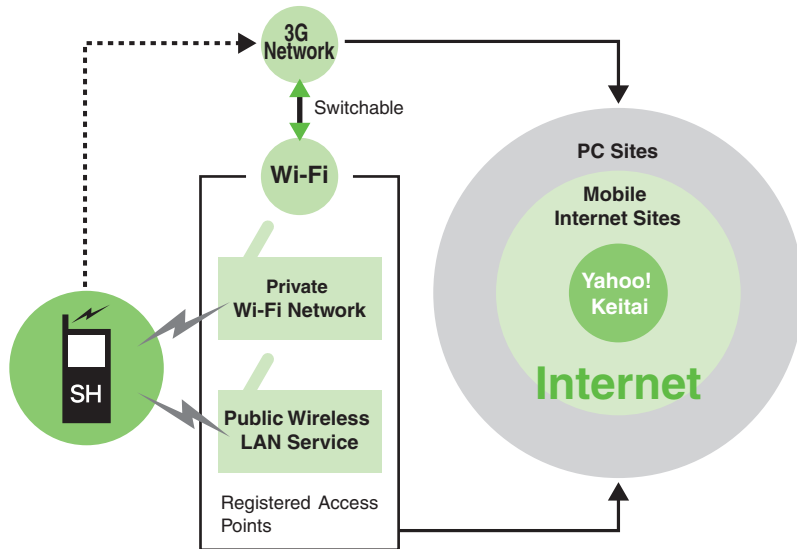
Connectivity & File Backup



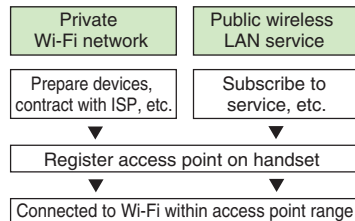
Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)

945SH supports wireless LAN (hereafter "Wi-Fi") that enables Internet connection via private Wi-Fi network, public wireless LAN service, etc. Handset connects to the Internet via Wi-Fi automatically whenever possible, allowing high-speed communication without switching networks.

Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi is required to use Wi-Fi.



Service Usage Outline



Registering Access Points

- Save access point information to handset to use Wi-Fi.
 - Handset connects to registered access points automatically.
- Access point search may take some time depending on the number of registered access points.

Important Wi-Fi Usage Note

- Depending on signal conditions, connection may automatically switch from Wi-Fi to 3G incurring packet transmission fees; set confirmation to appear as needed.

Advanced

- Subscribing to Keitai Wi-Fi (Japanese)
- Disabling Wi-Fi
- Showing confirmation when switching networks
- Protecting access point information by Handset Code
- Specifying channel range
- Opening access point properties
- Opening Wi-Fi-related handset properties
- Opening Keitai Wi-Fi information (Japanese) (P.15-25)



Registering Private Access Points

- Broadband connection, ISP subscription and Wi-Fi access point are required.
- To connect to corporate access points, consult the system administrator for settings.
- Configure settings on Wi-Fi access points beforehand. (For details, see the access point guide.)
- Access point information (SSID, authentication method, encryption method, security key, etc.) is unique to each access point. Check it beforehand.

Using AOSS™ or WPS

AOSS™ and WPS are systems/standards for easy access point registration and security configuration; available on compatible Wi-Fi access points.

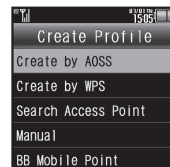
Using AOSS™

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Wi-Fi** ➔



Wi-Fi Menu

2 **Create Profile** ➔



Create Profile Menu

3 **Create by AOSS** ➔

4

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To cancel, press .
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi upon completion of registration (Switch On/Off: **On**).

Advanced

- Managing registered access points (P.15-25)



Using WPS

Example: Push Button Configuration (PBC) method

1 In Create Profile menu, Create by WPS ➔ ●

2 ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- To cancel, press (⏏).
- Handset connects to Wi-Fi upon completion of registration (Switch On/Off: **On**).

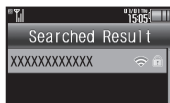
Using PIN Method

- Enter an eight-digit number (PIN) generated by handset into the access point.

After 1, (⏏) ➔ **PIN entry** ➔ ● ➔ ●
 ➔ Enter number on Display into access point ➔ ●

Access Point Search

1 In Create Profile menu, Search Access Point ➔ ●



- To cancel search, press (⏏).

2 Select access point ➔ ●

3 Enter corresponding security key ➔ ●

4 Yes ➔ ●

- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).

If Encryption Method is WEP

- After (⏏), authentication method selection window opens. Select a method according to the access point.

Advanced

- Setting IP address
- Setting DNS server addresses (P.15-25 - 15-26)



Registering Access Points Manually

Check access point information beforehand.

Major Items

Access Point Profile

Profile Name	Enter a name
SSID	Enter the same SSID as the access point

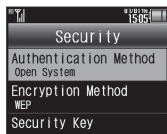
Security

Authentication Method	Supported authentication methods vary by access point; set accordingly
Encryption Method	Supported encryption methods vary by authentication method; set according to access point
Security Key	Enter the security key (also called "encryption key," "network key" or "passphrase") set on the access point

Entering Information

Example: Authentication Method is WPA/WPA2-PSK Auto.

- 1 In Create Profile menu, **Manual** ➡
- 2 **Profile Name** ➡ ➡ Enter name ➡
- 3 **SSID** ➡ ➡ Enter SSID ➡
- 4 **Security** ➡



Security Menu

- 5 **Authentication Method** ➡ ➡ Select method ➡
- 6 **Encryption Method** ➡ ➡ Select method ➡
- 7 **Security Key** ➡ ➡ Enter security key ➡



- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).

If Authentication Method is *Open System* & Encryption Method is *No Authentication*

- Omit security key entry.

If Encryption Method is *WEP*

- In , *<Empty>* ➡ ➡ Enter WEP key ➡ ➡ ➡ From



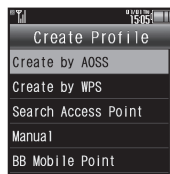
Using Public Wireless LAN Services

- Subscription with the corresponding service provider, etc. is required.
- Access point information (SSID, authentication method, encryption method, security key, etc.) is unique to each access point. Check it beforehand.
- Subscription to Keitai Wi-Fi provides access to BB mobilepoint service. For more about BB mobilepoint, see SOFTBANK TELECOM Website (P.17-24).

Using BB mobilepoint

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Wi-Fi** ➔

2 **Create Profile** ➔



Create Profile Menu

3 **BB Mobile Point** ➔

4 **Password** ➔ ➔ Enter password ➔

5

6 **Yes** ➔

- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).

Using Other Public Wireless LAN Services

- Check public wireless LAN service information beforehand.
- Connection to some public wireless LAN services may not be possible.

1 In **Create Profile** menu, **Manual** ➔

2 **Complete fields**
• For details, see P.15-5 "Entering Information."

3 **Advanced Settings** ➔ ➔ **WISPr Settings** ➔

4 **User ID** ➔ ➔ Enter ID ➔

5 **Password** ➔ ➔ Enter password ➔

6 **Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

7 ➔ ➔

8 **Yes** ➔

- Handset connects to Wi-Fi (Switch On/Off: **On**).



Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 945SH and compatible devices.

945SH supports IrSimple™ high-speed wireless communications protocol; exchange large image files instantly with compatible mobile phones, printers, etc.

Transferable Files

Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Notepad	Templates (Messaging)
Bookmarks	Data Folder

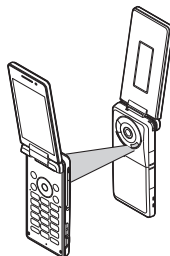
- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.

- Handset cannot receive connection requests during Software Update.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.
- 945SH complies with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not transfer properly.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
IrSS Transfer	Exchange single JPEG image files with compatible devices at high speed

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)



15

1  **Tools**  
Connectivity  **Infrared** 

2 **Switch On/Off**  
On(3 min.) 



- Infrared is activated.
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.

 **Connection request arrives**


Request Window

4 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press (Σ/).

■ One File Transfer

Yes ➡ ☒ ➡ **Yes** ➡ ☒

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➡ ☒ ➡ Enter Authorization

Code ➡  ➡ *As New Items* ➡ 

■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes ➡ ☒ ➡ Enter Authorization

Code ➡  ➡ Delete All & Save ➡

⊙ ➡ **Yes** ➡ ⊙

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

■ IrSS Transfer

Yes ➡ ☒






- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).















Sending Files

One File Transfer



Example: Phone Book entry

- 1  ➔ **Select entry** ➔  ➔ **Send Entry** ➔ 
- 2 **Via Infrared** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts**
 - When complete, entry search window returns.







All File Transfer

- 1  ➔ **Tools** ➔  ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Infrared** ➔ 
- 2 **Send All** ➔ 
- 3 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ 
- 4 **Select item** ➔  (/ ) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ 
- 5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts** ➔ 

Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

- 1  ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ 
- 2 **Pictures or DCIM** ➔ 
 - For **DCIM**, select a folder and press .
- 3 **Select image** ➔  (Long)
- 4 **Yes or No** ➔  ➔ **Transfer starts**
 - Images may be reduced automatically before transfer depending on the size.
 - When complete, file list returns.
 - Transfers are one-way; end even if files are not received.

Advanced

-   Sending My Details  Sending non-Phone Book files  Disabling image size reduction for IrSS Transfer (P.15-26)

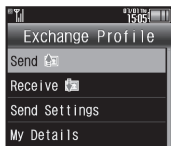


Exchanging Contact Information

Exchange name, phone numbers, mail addresses, and other contact info with other compatible handsets via infrared. Read **P.15-7** "Infrared Precautions" beforehand.

Receiving Profiles

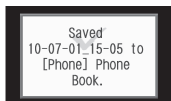
1 (Long)



Exchange Profile Menu

2 Receive →

3 Profile received



- Received profile is saved to Phone Book.

Sending Profiles

1 In Exchange Profile menu, Send → Transfer starts

Changing Profile Items to Send

[Exchange Profile Menu] **Send**

Settings → Select item →
☐/ ☒ → Complete selection →

Opening My Details

[Exchange Profile Menu] **My Details**
 →



IC Transmission

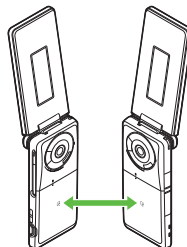
Wirelessly transfer files between 945SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

Getting Started

IC Transmission Precautions

Align  logos of both devices.



Align  logos

Keep  logos aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options



One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Advanced

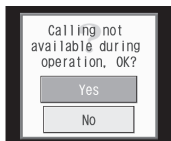
-   Disabling one file reception (**P.15-26**)



Transferring Files via IC Transmission

Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.


2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

Subsequent Operations

One File Transfer

Yes →  → Yes → 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes →  → Enter Authorization

Code →  → As New Items → 

All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes →  → Enter Authorization

Code →  → Delete All & Save →

 → Yes → 

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry




1  → Select entry →  → Send Entry → 

2 Via IC Transmission → 

3 Yes →  → Transfer starts

- When complete, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1  → Tools →  → 
Connectivity → IC
Transmission → 



2 Send All → 

3 Yes →  → Enter Handset
Code → 

4 Select item →  (/) →
Complete selection → 

5 Enter Authorization Code →
 → Transfer starts → 

Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

Advanced

-   Sending My Details  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.15-26)



Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between 945SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).

- For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
- 945SH supports simultaneous connection with two devices. (May be unavailable depending on the device type.)
- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.
 - Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by the Bluetooth SIG.
 - Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
 - Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Precautions

Check transmission range of your Bluetooth® device to use with handset properly. Maximum transmission range for transfers between 945SH handsets is ten meters. (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)

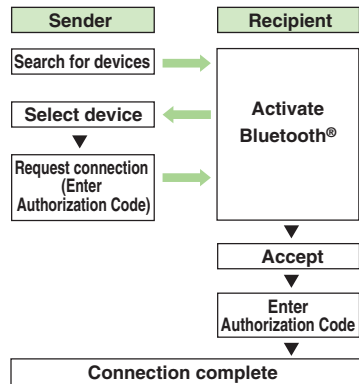
Important Handsfree Device Usage Note

- Handle call operations on the device in use.

Bluetooth® Watches

- Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions:
 - Clock sync
 - Alarm notice
 - News notice
 - Mail notice
 - Remote Shutter
 - Mode Settings
 - Quick Silent
 - Caller ID notice
 - Hold calls
 - Show Operator Name
- For details about functions/operations, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

Bluetooth® Connection



Authorization Code

- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.
- Authorization Code entry may not be required depending on the other device.

Advanced

- Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests
- Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled
- Switching audio output to wireless device
- Changing Bluetooth® name for handset
- Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties (And more on **P.15-26 - 15-27**)
- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Clock
- Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (**P.15-27**)



Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Activating Bluetooth®

1 (Long)



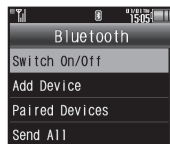
- Bluetooth® is activated.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.
- To cancel Bluetooth®, Long Press

Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

Device Search & Pairing

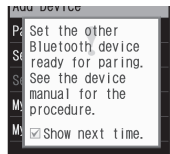
First, activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

1 ➔ Tools ➔ ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔



Bluetooth Menu

2 Add Device ➔



- To suppress message, press before 3.

3

- Found devices are listed after search.
- To cancel search, press .

4 Select device ➔

If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

5 Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device ➔ ➔ Pairing complete

- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Connecting Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1 Compliant Devices

In , Yes ➔ ➔ Pairing complete

- If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.

Advanced

- Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu
- Editing Paired Device list
- Disconnecting handsfree devices, etc.
- Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service
- Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (P.15-27)



Connecting Paired Handsfree Devices, Etc.

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➔ ●



Paired Device List

2 Select device ➔ ●

If handset is already connected to another device, disconnection confirmation may appear; choose **Yes** and press ●.

- The device is connected and ☒ (preferred) appears.

Accepting Connection Requests

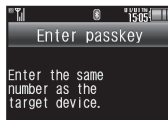
Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

2 Yes ➔ ●



3 Enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➔ ●

- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

Connecting Bluetooth® Specification Ver. 2.1 Compliant Devices

In 3, Yes ➔ ●

- If the other device is a keyboard, follow onscreen instructions.



Transferring Files

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.15-7**.
- When requested, enter Authorization Code.

Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window


2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

Subsequent Operations

One File Transfer

Yes ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ As New Items ➔ 

All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Delete All & Save ➔

 ➔ Yes ➔ 

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  ➔ Select entry ➔  ➔ Send Entry ➔ 


2 Via Bluetooth ➔ 

3 Select device ➔ 

4 Yes ➔  ➔ Transfer starts

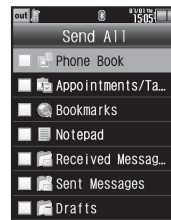
- When complete, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Send All* ➔ 


2 Select device ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 

3 Enter Handset Code ➔ 



4 Select item ➔  (/ ) ➔ Complete selection ➔   ➔ Transfer starts ➔ 

Sending Phone Book

- In 4, Picture transfer confirmation appears; choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

Advanced

-   Sending My Details
-  Sending non-Phone Book files (**P.15-28**)



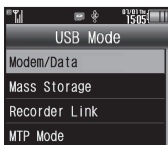
Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder

Connecting PC

Accessing Memory Card

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset. USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable



2 Mass Storage ➡

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

3 Yes ➡ Connection ends

- Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
 ➡ **Tools** ➡ **Connectivity**
 ➡ **USB Mode** ➡ **From 2**
 ■ Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

Utility Software

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

Mobile Data Communication Fees

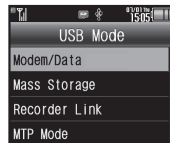
- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

Connecting Blu-ray Disc Recorder

Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable to transfer recorded programs to Memory Card without removing card from handset.

- Compatible only with SHARP Blu-ray Disc recorders. For details, see **P.17-24** "Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders."
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1 Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable



2 Recorder Link ➡

- Transfer files from Blu-ray Disc recorder to Memory Card.

3 Yes ➡ Connection ends

- Open transferred files via **Recorder Contents** in TV menu or Media Player menu (Videos).

If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
 ➡ **Tools** ➡ **Connectivity**
 ➡ **USB Mode** ➡ **From 2**



Connecting TV

Connect handset to a TV via an HDMI cable (sold separately) to view images and video saved on handset/Memory Card, and more.

- Supported on TVs with an HDMI port. (Some functions may be unavailable depending on the TV.)
- Connect to a SHARP Familink-compatible AQUOS TV to use handset functions easily on TV. For details, see **P.17-24** "ケータイ daSH."
- Use recommended HDMI cables only. For details, see **P.17-24** "HDMI Cable Compatibility."
- For more information, see the TV manual.

Precautions

- Purchase and use an HDMI certified cable (Category 2 recommended) that supports HDMI Type-D Micro connectors.
- Do not force an HDMI cable into/out of HDMI Port.
- Place handset on a flat, stable surface when connected to a TV via an HDMI cable; tilting an HDMI cable relative to handset may prevent proper connection, causing malfunction, etc.
- Close HDMI Port Cover firmly after ending HDMI connection.

Features











Special menu opens on TV with these items:

Videos/ Pictures	Play video or open images
Music	Play music
Web	Browse the Internet
Documents	Open PDF files, etc.
Slide Show	Start Slide Show
Information	Check Missed Calls, etc.
Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
More	Access other files/functions

AQUOS Familink

945SH supports AQUOS Familink; connect to a SHARP Familink-compatible AQUOS TV to use handset functions with TV remote.

Handset ⇄ TV Remote Key Assignments:

	Cursor keys
	OK key
	Back key
	Power on/off key
	Blue key
	Red key
	1 - 9 (numeric keys)
	10 (numeric key)
	11* (numeric key)
	12* (numeric key)

*May not be supported depending on the TV.



Using HDMI Connection

- First, power on TV and set handset in Standby.
- Touch Panel is disabled during HDMI connection.

1 Connect handset to a TV via HDMI cable

2 (Long)



- Special menu opens on TV.
- **Connecting via HDMI** appears on handset.

3 Select item ➡

- Menu/window opens.

4 ➡ Connection ends

- Disconnect HDMI cable from TV and handset.

Slide Show Tip

- **Film Mode** (AQUOS TV setting) may smooth transition between images.

Advanced

- Changing output size
 Showing incoming calls on TV during HDMI connection
 Changing AQUOS Familink settings (P.15-28)



Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once. Items with * are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates (Messaging)
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	User Dictionary
Mail Groups*	Album
Received Msg.*	Used Log
Sent Messages*	Manage Model Type Data

Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Transferring All Items

- Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Contents Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.



Backup & Restore

Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Phone/** ➔ **Backup/Restore** ➔



Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 **Backup Selected Items** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔
- 3 **Yes** ➔
- 4 **Select item** ➔ (☐ / ☒) ➔ **Complete selection**

- 5 ➔ **Yes** ➔
 - To cancel, press .

- 6 **Backup complete** ➔ ➔

Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 4, ➔ **Select option** ➔ ➔

From 5

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 4, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All**

➔

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items: (Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current--with the exception of Contents Keys--handset content.)

- 1 In Backup/Restore menu, **Restore Selected Items** ➔
- 2 **Yes** ➔
- 3 **Select item** ➔ (☐ / ☒) ➔ **Complete selection**

- 4
 - If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

- 5 **Select file** ➔
 - Repeat 5 to complete selection.

- 6

- 7 **Yes** ➔
 - To cancel, press .

- 8 **Restore complete** ➔ ➔

Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 3, ➔ **Select option** ➔ ➔

From 4

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 3, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All**

➔

Changing Restoration Method

After 3, select item ➔ ➔ **Change to Add Mode or Chg. to Overwrite Mode** ➔ ➔ From 4

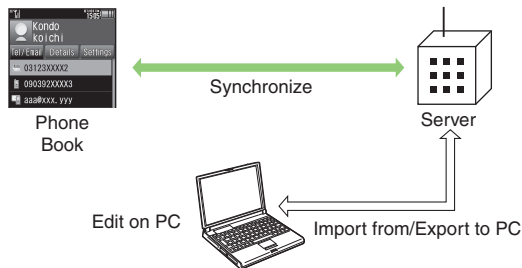
Advanced

Backing up all items Encoding data for backup Restoring all items Deleting backup files (And more on P.15-28 - 15-29)



About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.15-23).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.17-24).
- Synchronization incurs packet transmission fees.

Auto Synchronization

- When subscribed to SAB, Network Information retrieval activates auto synchronization (Auto Sync Settings: **On**, Set Frequency: **After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)**, Sync Mode Setting: **Normal**); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
- Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Synchronization	Normal	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB ¹
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB ²
	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB ³
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁴
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book ⁵
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
	Sync Lock	Prevent synchronization from handset
Send Notice ⁶	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification⁷	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification⁸	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
	Tomodachi Email Filter⁹	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

¹ If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

² Unrelated SAB changes remain.

³ Any existing SAB content is deleted.

⁴ Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

⁵ Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

⁶ Access this function via handset (My SoftBank; Japanese) or a PC.

⁷ Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

⁸ Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

⁹ Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese).



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ Unsynchronizable Items

These Phone Book settings are lost:

- Picture, Tone, Vibration, Illumination

■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, performing synchronization via **Normal**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, performing synchronization via **Normal**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

■ Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

• SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.

• Other SoftBank 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.

• V8 Series

Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

Advanced

- Canceling auto synchronization (P.15-29)

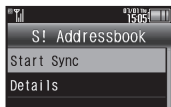


Using Sync Commands

Normal (Start Sync)

Synchronize Phone Book and SAB via Normal.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔ ➔ **S! Addressbook Back-up** ➔



S! Addressbook Menu

- 2 **Start Sync** ➔
- 3 ➔ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization

➔ **Yes** ➔

Other Sync Commands

Available Commands:

Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB; any existing SAB content is deleted
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book
Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book; any existing Phone Book content is deleted

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), synchronization is performed via Normal regardless of selection.

- 1 **In S! Addressbook menu, Details** ➔
- 2 **Backup/Restore** ➔

- 3 **Select command** ➔

- Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

- 4 ➔ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization

➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

- Changing auto synchronization settings Opening log Deleting log records (P.15-29)





Wi-Fi	
General	
Subscribing to Keitai Wi-Fi (Japanese)	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Application ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
Disabling Wi-Fi	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wi-Fi is disabled (set to Off) automatically after a period of disuse. Set to Off when not using Wi-Fi to extend Battery Time.
Showing confirmation when switching networks	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Common Settings ➔ ● ➔ Switch Notification ➔ ● ➔ Switch from 3G to Wi-Fi or Switch from Wi-Fi to 3G ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●</p>
Protecting access point information by Handset Code	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Common Settings ➔ ● ➔ Handset Code Lock Setting ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code is required to re-select Off.
Specifying channel range	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Common Settings ➔ ● ➔ Channel Range ➔ ● ➔ Select range ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In some countries, there are restrictions on available channels. Select channel range accordingly while outside Japan.
Opening access point properties	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Connect Information ➔ ●</p>
Opening Wi-Fi-related handset properties	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Show MAC Address ➔ ●</p>

Opening Keitai Wi-Fi information (Japanese)	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ What's Keitai Wi-Fi? ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
---	--

Managing Access Points

Managing registered access points	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Profile List ➔ ● ➔ Select access point ➔ ⓘ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Changing Priority Change Priority ➔ ● ➔ Select target location ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Editing Edit ➔ ● ➔ Complete fields ➔ ⓘ</p>
	<p>Deleting Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>

Advanced Settings

When finished with Advanced Settings, complete other fields to register an access point.

Setting IP address	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Connectivity ➔ Wi-Fi ➔ ● ➔ Create Profile ➔ ● ➔ Manual ➔ ● ➔ Advanced Settings ➔ ● ➔ IP Settings ➔ ● ➔ IP Address ➔ ● ➔ Manual ➔ ● ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Entering IP Address IP Address ➔ ● ➔ Enter numbers ➔ ● ➔ ⓘ</p>
	<p>Entering Subnet Mask Subnet Mask ➔ ● ➔ Enter numbers ➔ ● ➔ ⓘ</p>
	<p>Entering Default Gateway Default Gateway ➔ ● ➔ Enter numbers ➔ ● ➔ ⓘ</p>

Setting DNS server addresses	Start Here → Tools → Connectivity → Wi-Fi → Create Profile → Manual → Advanced Settings → IP Settings → DNS Server Address → Manual → See below
	Entering Primary DNS Primary DNS → Enter numbers →
	Entering Secondary DNS Secondary DNS → Enter numbers →

Infrared

Sending My Details	Send My Card → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file → Send (or Send/Blog) → Via Infrared → Yes → Transfer starts
Disabling image size reduction for IrSS Transfer	Tools → Connectivity → Infrared → IrSS Key Setting → Send via IrSS →

IC Transmission

Disabling one file reception	Tools → Connectivity → IC Transmission → 1 File Reception → Off(Disabled) →
Sending My Details	Send My Card → Via IC Transmission → Yes → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file → Send (or Send/Blog) → Via IC Transmission → Yes → Transfer starts

Bluetooth®

■ General

Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Visibility → Hide My Phone →
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Bluetooth Timeout → Select time →
Switching audio output to wireless device	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Sound Output → Bluetooth Device → • Bluetooth Device is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Device Name → Enter name →
Using handsfree device as primary means of conversation	Tools → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My Device Settings → Handsfree Setting → Handsfree Mode →



Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → S! Appli Request → ● → Off → ●</p>
Receiving connection requests while connected to a device	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Settings → ● → Plural Connect Standby → ● → On → ●</p>
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → My Device Details → ●</p> <p>● Press (v) to view service details.</p>
Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Switch On/Off → ● → On → ●</p>

■ Bluetooth® Watches

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset Clock	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Setting Watch → ● → Set BT-Watch Time → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>● Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.</p>
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Setting Watch → ● → Notification → ● → Select item → ● → Permit or Prohibit → ●</p> <p>● Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.</p>

■ Paired Devices

	<p>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Paired Devices → ● → Select device → ☹ → See below</p>
Editing Paired Device list	<p>Renaming Paired Devices Change Name → ● → Enter name → ●</p> <p>Deleting Paired Devices Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p> <p>● To delete a device connected to handset, choose Yes and press ●.</p>
Disconnecting handsfree devices, etc.	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Paired Devices → ● → Select connected device → ●</p>
Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	<p>● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Paired Devices → ● → Select device → ☹ → Select Service → ● → Handsfree function or Audio function → ●</p>
Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection	<p>Start Here ● → Tools → ● → ☹ Connectivity → Bluetooth → ● → Paired Devices → ● → Select device → ☹ → Set to Prior Connect → ● → See below</p> <p>For Handsfree Telephony Handsfree On → ●</p> <p>● For Handsfree On, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls.</p> <p>For Audio Output Audio On → ●</p> <p>● For Audio On, Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when Sound Output is set to Bluetooth Device.</p>



■ Sending Files

Sending My Details	→ → → → → →
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file → → <i>Send (or Send/ Blog)</i> → → → →

HDMI Connection

Changing output size	→ <i>Tools</i> → → <i>Connectivity</i> → <i>HDMI Connection</i> → → <i>HDMI Output Size Setting</i> →
Showing incoming calls on TV during HDMI connection	→ <i>Tools</i> → → <i>Connectivity</i> → <i>HDMI Connection</i> → → <i>HDMI Output Incoming Call</i> →
Changing AQUOS Familink settings	<div> → → → <i>HDMI Connection</i> → → <i>See below</i> </div> <div> <i>Disabling TV Remote Text Entry Input Remote-Control Text</i> → → </div> <div> <i>Disabling Automatic Familink Detection while Charging</i> </div> <div> <i>Charging Auto Find</i> → → </div>

Backup

■ Backup & Restore

Backing up all items	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → → <i>Backup All Items</i> → → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> → →
Changing backup location for Data Folder files	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → → <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Data Folder Backup</i> →
Selecting Phone Book picture backup option	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → → <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Ph.BookPhoto Backup</i> →
Encoding data for backup	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → → <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Encode Settings</i> → → <i>Select item</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Messaging folders and Data Folder files.
Restoring all items	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → → <i>Restore All Items</i> → →
Restoring individual files	→ <i>Settings</i> → → <i>Phone/Backup/Restore</i> → → <i>File Management</i> → → <i>Select item</i> → → <i>Select file</i> → → <i>Restore</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for Data Folder files.



Backup Files

Deleting backup files	<p>Start Here → Settings → → Phone/ → Backup/Restore → → File Management → → See below</p>
	<p>Data Folder Files</p> <p>Select item → → Select file → → Delete → → Yes → </p>
	<p>Other Files</p> <p>Select item → → Select file → → Complete selection → → Yes → </p>

S! Addressbook Back-up

Canceling auto synchronization	<p> → Phone → → S! Addressbook Back-up → → Details → → Auto Sync Settings → → Set On/Off → → Off → → </p>
Changing auto synchronization settings	<p>Start Here → Phone → → S! Addressbook Back-up → → Details → → Auto Sync Settings → → See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set Set On/Off to On beforehand.
	<p>Changing Auto Sync Frequency</p> <p>Set Frequency → → Select frequency → → Enter/select date/time/day of the week → → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.), omit steps for date, time, etc.
	<p>Changing Auto Sync Command</p> <p>Sync Mode Setting → → Select command → → </p>

Opening log

→ Phone → → S! Addressbook Back-up → → Details → → Sync Log → → Select record →

Deleting log records

Start Here → Phone → → S! Addressbook Back-up → → Details → → Sync Log → → See below

One Record

Select record → → Delete → → Yes →

All Records

→ Delete All → → Yes →





Wi-Fi

? Wi-Fi disconnects

- Connection is interrupted automatically if Display goes dark after a period of inactivity; restored when Display reactivates.

? Cannot connect to Wi-Fi

- Depending on access point settings, handset may not connect to Wi-Fi when powered on outside 3G range. In this case, pass through the 3G service area carrying the handset and retry.

? Login page opens when using public wireless LAN service

- Some public wireless LAN services require authentication via Direct Browser. Enter corresponding user ID/password.

File Transfer

? Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.

? Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is On

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Category, Tone/Video, Illumination, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Alarm tone/video, Secret, S! Friend's Status

? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

? Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Data Folder (Other Documents) and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.

? Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

? Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

Infrared

? Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.

Backup & Restore

? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.
- When Encode Settings for Data Folder is set to **On**, files with these extensions cannot be backed up:
 - .txt, .vbm, .url, .htm, .html, .xml, .xhtml

? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; reassign it.

? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser/Direct Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.



Date & Time	16-2
Display & Illumination	16-3
Language.....	16-3
Image & Text.....	16-3
Display & Backlight	16-3
Standby Display	16-4
Collective Illumination	16-4
Key Backlight	16-4
Effect Illumination	16-4
Incoming Transmissions.....	16-5
Handset Response	16-5

Sounds	16-6
System Sounds	16-6
Additional Sound Settings	16-6
Connectivity	16-7
Network	16-7
IP Service	16-7
Reset.....	16-8
Restoring Default Settings.....	16-8

16






































































Handset Customization



Date & Time Settings

Date & Time

[Start Here](#)  **Settings**  In Sound/Display menu, **Date & Time** 

Setting the date and time	Set Date/Time   Enter the year  Enter the month  Enter the day  Enter the time   Yes  
Correcting Clock manually	Time Correction   Manual   Yes   Yes  
Disabling auto Clock correction	Time Correction   Auto Corr. Setting   Off  
Setting auto Clock correction timing	Time Correction   Auto Corr. Setting   On     Select item       
Activating Daylight Saving	Daylight Saving   On  
Changing Time Zone	Set Time Zone    Select area  
Adding custom time zone	Set Time Zone    Enter city name    + or -   Enter time difference  
Changing time format to 12 hour	Time Format   12 Hour  
Changing date format	Date Format   Select option  
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	Calendar Format   Monday-Sunday  



Y Display & Illumination Settings 1

Language

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ Sound/Display menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English

Language or 言語選択 ➔ ● ➔ **English or 日本語** ➔ ●

Image & Text

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)** ➔ ●

Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ● ➔ **Select image** ➔ ● ➔ **Specify image area** ➔ ●
 ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Customized Screen** ➔ ● ➔ ●
 ● Not available for **Power On** or **Power Off**.

Selecting image enhancement option for Standby and video playback

Vivid Mode ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Changing font of numbers entered in Standby

Dial Number ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ●

Showing a message each time handset is powered on

Greeting Message ➔ ● ➔ **Edit Message** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter message** ➔ ● ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

Hiding caller info in Viewer position

Caller Display ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Display & Backlight

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Disabling display transition effects

Display Effects ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Changing Display/key Backlight illumination time

Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Time Out** ➔ ● ➔ **Select time** ➔ ●
 ● For custom illumination time, select **Other**.

Changing Display Brightness

Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ ●

Canceling/activating Light Sensor

Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔  ( / ) ➔ ●

Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off

Display Saving ➔ ● ➔ **Select time** ➔ ●



Display & Illumination Settings 2

Standby Display

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Sound/Display menu, *Display* → Standby Display

Changing Clock/Calendar	<i>Clock/Calendar</i> → Select type
Selecting Mobile Widget display option	<i>Show Widget</i> → Select option
Hiding indicators in Standby	<i>Display Status Icon</i> → Off
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	<i>Show Operator Name</i> → On

Collective Illumination

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts*

Changing <i>Separate</i> illumination patterns at once	<i>Set Illumination</i> → <i>Collective</i> → Select theme → Yes or No
--	--

Key Backlight

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Phone/

Disabling key Backlight illumination	<i>Set Key Light</i> → Off
--------------------------------------	----------------------------

Effect Illumination

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Sound/Display menu, *Sounds & Alerts*

Setting illumination pattern by action	<i>Set Illumination</i> → <i>Separate</i> → <i>Effect Illumination</i> → Select action → <i>Pattern/Color</i> → Select pattern → Select color • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
Setting Key Illumination pattern by action	<i>Set Illumination</i> → <i>Separate</i> → <i>Effect Illumination</i> → Select action → <i>Key Pattern</i> → Select pattern
Disabling illumination by action	<i>Set Illumination</i> → <i>Separate</i> → <i>Effect Illumination</i> → Select action → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → Off
Setting in-call illumination	<i>Set Illumination</i> → <i>Separate</i> → <i>Effect Illumination</i> → <i>Calling</i> → <i>Switch On/Off</i> → Select option



Y Incoming Transmission Settings

Handset Response

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Sound/Display menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔ ●

Changing ringtone volume	Volume ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Selecting illumination option	Set Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Separate ➔ ● ➔ Event Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On, Link to Sound or Off ➔ ●
Changing Small Light patterns	Set Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Separate ➔ ● ➔ Event Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ● • Light color is unselectable for some patterns.
Changing Key Illumination patterns	Set Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Separate ➔ ● ➔ Event Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● • Regardless of Key Pattern setting, ringtones control illumination when Switch On/Off is set to Link to Sound .
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed transmissions	Set Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Separate ➔ ● ➔ Status Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On or Off ➔ ●
Setting illumination pattern for missed transmissions	Set Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Separate ➔ ● ➔ Status Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Pattern/Color ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ● • Light color is unselectable for some patterns. • After Information window opens, Small Lights flash for up to 24 hours, then go out (to save battery power).
Answering calls with other keys	Any Key Answer ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ● • Use 0 - 9 , * , # , (call), (call), (call), (call) or (call) in addition to (call).
Muting ringer with other keys	Any Key Answer ➔ ● ➔ Only Mute ➔ ● • Use 0 - 9 , * , # , (call), (call), (call), (call) or (call) in addition to (call).



Sound Settings

System Sounds

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Sound/Display menu, **Sounds & Alerts**

Enabling Keypad Tones	System Sounds → Keypad Tones → Select tone
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	System Sounds → S! Circle Talk → Select tone
Changing other System Sounds	System Sounds → Select item → Tone or Sound → Select folder → Select tone/file • For files with limited usage period, choose Yes and press .
Disabling System Sounds	System Sounds → Select item → Tone or Sound → Off • Not available for S! Circle Talk . • For Keypad Tones , omit Tone or Sound selection step.
Changing System Sound duration	System Sounds → Select item → Duration → Select/enter time • Not available for Keypad Tones or S! Circle Talk .
Changing System Sound volume	Volume → General Volume → Adjust level

Additional Sound Settings

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Sound/Display menu



Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	Ringer Output → Earphone
Activating Speaker surround	Sounds & Alerts → Surround → On



Connectivity Settings

Network

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Network

Selecting a Network manually	Select Network → Manual → Select Network
Adding preferred Networks	Select Network → Set Preferred → Select target location → Insert → Select Network
Adding preferred Networks to the end	Select Network → Set Preferred → Add to End → Select Network
Deleting preferred Networks	Select Network → Set Preferred → Select Network → Delete
Adding Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Add → Enter country code → Enter Network code → Enter name → Select NW Type • After selecting Add New Network and pressing  , Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press  again and proceed.
Editing Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Select Network → Change → Edit in the same manner as adding Networks
Deleting Networks	Select Network → Add New Network → Select Network → Delete
Switching Network service between 3G and GSM manually	Select Service → Manual → Select service
Refreshing Network connection	Re-search Signal
Retrieving Network Information	Retrieve NW Info → Yes
Checking Network status	Network Info
Editing connection names for mobile data communication	External Device → Select name → Edit
Clearing connection names for mobile data communication	External Device → Reset → Yes

IP Service

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Phone/Locks

Enabling IP Service	IP Service Setting → On • Enable IP Service to use S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk.
---------------------	--



Reset Settings

Restoring Default Settings	
Start Here → Settings → Phone/ → Master Reset →	
Restoring default handset settings	<div>Reset Settings → Enter Administrator Code → Yes → Yes →</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	<div>Reset All → Enter Administrator Code → Yes → Yes →</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.)• Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.• Handset Code and Administrator Code return to the default state (unset).

- A confirmation may appear before entering Administrator Code; end the current function to proceed.
- When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.



USIM Card	17-2
About USIM Card	17-2
USIM Card Installation.....	17-3
Battery	17-4
Battery Installation.....	17-4
Software Update	17-5
Cleaning Handset	17-6
Troubleshooting	17-7
Text Entry Key Assignments	17-9
Pager Codes	17-11
Pager Code List	17-11

Character Codes	17-12
Character Code List	17-12
Weather Indicators	17-18
Weather Indicator List	17-18
Specifications	17-19
Memory Card Structure & Contents ...	17-25
Menu List	17-26
Index	17-34
Warranty & Service	17-42
Customer Service	17-43

17

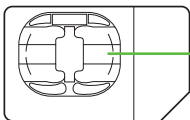
Appendix



About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Clean with soft dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43).

USIM PIN

Four- to eight-digit code (**9999** by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict handset use.

PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

Enter PUK Code ➡ ● ➡ **Enter new PIN** ➡ ● ➡ **Re-enter new PIN** ➡ ●

- Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.17-43) for recovery.



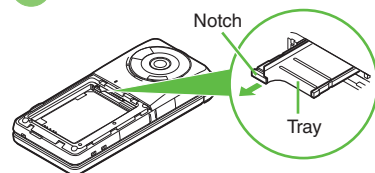
USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

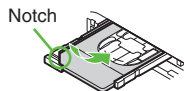
1 Remove battery (P.17-4)

2 Pull out Tray



- Use Notch to pull out Tray.

3 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up



4 Push in Tray fully

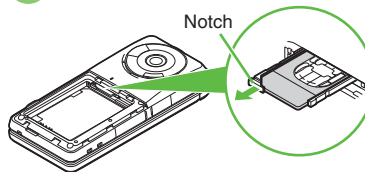


- Reinstall battery (P.17-4).

Removing

1 Remove battery

2 Pull out Tray



- Use Notch to pull out Tray.

3 Lift and slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications and BookSurfing® may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.



Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Close Battery Cover firmly. Debris trapped between Cover and base may expose handset to liquid/dust.
- To maintain water/dust resistance, close Battery Cover properly.
- Battery is not waterproofed or dustproofed.

Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

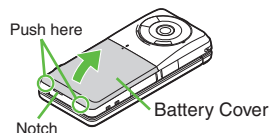


Li-ion00

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

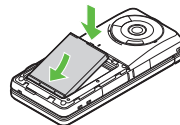
Inserting & Removing

1 Remove Battery Cover



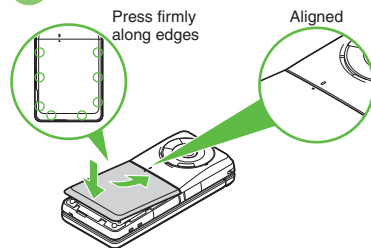
- Use Notch to open Cover. Push Cover up as shown, then lift to remove it.

2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

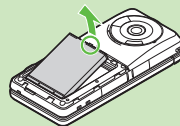
3 Close Battery Cover



- Align mark on Cover with Recorder Microphone, then press Cover firmly.

Removing

- Power handset off and lift battery as shown.



Software Update





Check for firmware updates and download as required.

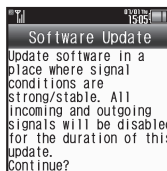
Precautions

- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank Mobile cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **Software Update** ➔ 
- 2 **Software Update** ➔ 




- Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result

In , **Update Result** ➔ 

Scheduled Update (Japanese)


SoftBank Mobile sends update notice via SMS; read and change preset update schedule as needed. A confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result

While Information window appears,
Update Result ➔ 

Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, power handset off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.17-43).



Cleaning Handset

Washing Handset

Wipe off dirt, sand, beverage, etc., gently with cloth. Then with Battery Cover closed, hold handset approximately 10 cm below faucet or shower head and wash with low-pressure tap water (6 liters/min. or lower) at normal temperature (5°C - 35°C). Wash with your hands, taking care not to open Covers; do not use a brush or sponge. Dry handset before use.

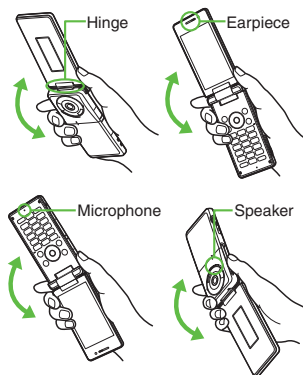
- Before washing handset, make sure that Battery Cover and Port Cover are closed firmly.
- Do not use a washing machine or ultrasonic cleaner.
- Do not place handset in a microwave oven to dry it. Battery/handset may leak, burst, overheat or ignite; may cause malfunction, accident or injury.
- Do not dry handset by exposing it to extreme heat (e.g., hot air from dryers, etc.); may cause warping, discoloration or damage.

Drying Handset

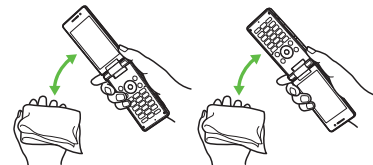
Dry these parts/areas after washing handset:

Hinge	Earpiece
Microphone	Speaker

- 1 Wipe handset surface with dry cloth
- 2 Holding hinge firmly by its sides, shake handset about 20 times



- 3 Pat against dry cloth to remove moisture from grooves



- 4 Leave handset on dry cloth for approximately 2 - 3 hours at room temperature



Do Not Use Wet Handset

- Voice quality may be affected, or moisture may transfer to clothes, bag, etc.
- Moisture may short-circuit External Device Port and HDMI Port.
- Exposure to cold may freeze moisture causing malfunction.



Troubleshooting

General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't power on	Was  pressed long enough?	Press  longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.17-4).
Operation is restricted after power on	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry <i>On</i> ?	If <i>On</i> , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card appears	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Power handset off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with dry cloth and re-insert.
REFRESH appears and handset returns to Standby	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Operation is restricted	Keypad Lock may be active.	Cancel Keypad Lock (P.2-20).
	Function Lock may be active.	Cancel Function Lock (P.13-2).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (P.13-3).
Handset/AC Charger feels warm	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 945SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Clock settings are lost	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



■ Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Lights flash red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to Desktop Holder or handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.17-4).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, S! Application, Media Player and camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.



Text Entry Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
① ㇰ	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 □ (space)	1	1
② ㇱ	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
③ ㇲ	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
④ ㇳ	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
⑤ ㇴ	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
⑥ ㇵ	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
⑦ ㇶ	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
⑧ ㇷ	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
⑨ ㇸ	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
⑩ ㇹ	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
✖ ㇺ	・ ・	・ ・ _1	_____	✕ + P (pause) ? - ²	_____
Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List ³					_____
Ⓐ ㇻ	.,. ♯ (line break) ? ! □ (space)	.. ♯ (line break) ?! □ (space)	_____	#	_____

¹ - is available only in Single-byte Katakana mode.

² Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.

³ May not be enterable in some windows.





Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion ⁴	Cursor up/down; (line break) when is pressed at the end of text			
	Cursor left/right				
	Switch entry modes (except during conversion)				
	Search Word ⁵	_____			
 (Long)	Toggle Personal Mode ⁵	_____	Toggle Personal Mode ^{5,6}	_____	
	Toggle case (for some characters)			_____	
	_____		Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)		
	Delete one character				
 (Long)	Cancel conversion	_____	Cancel conversion ⁶	_____	Delete code
 (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover characters deleted with				
	Re-convert ⁷	_____	Re-convert ^{6, 7}	_____	
	Confirm/Done				
	Non-Predictive suggestions ⁵	_____			
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion ⁵	_____			
 (Long)	Single Kanji Conversion ⁵	_____			

⁴Cursor moves up/down except during conversion.⁵Available during conversion.⁶Available only in Single-byte Alphanumerics mode.⁷Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.

Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.



Double-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*1	
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	✕	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	。	6	7	8	9	0



Double-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	。					

*1 Press   to insert  (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.

*2 Press   to toggle upper and lower case modes.

Single-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&		*1	
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	✕	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	。	。	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	。					



Character Code List

First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit								
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010	Space	ゝ	ゑ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	つ	は	て	で		080	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	171	迂	雨	卵	鶏	鵜	丑	碓	白	嘘
011	ゝ	ゑ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	044	と	ど	な	ぢ	ぬ	つ	は	て	で		081	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	172	唄	蔚	鰻	鵜	鵜	浦	瓜	罇	
012	ゝ	ゑ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	045	ひ	び	ふ	ぶ	め	べ	べ	ほ		082	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	173	云	運	雲							
013	ゝ	ゑ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	046	ほ	ぼ	ま	み	む	め	め	め		083	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一											
014	ゝ	ゑ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	047	ゆ	よ	ま	り	め	れ	れ	わ																					
015	ゝ	ゑ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	048	あ	え	を	ん																									
016	+	-	±	×	÷	=	≠	<	>	050	ア	カ	イ	キ	ウ	エ	オ			130	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	174	曳	米	永	泳	浅	益	額	穎	英
017	≧	∞	£	¥	♀	&	*	@	☆	051	オ	カ	イ	キ	ウ	エ	オ			131	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	175	衛	詠	鋭	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越	
018	≡	∂	‰	£	¥	#	&	*	☆	052	コ	サ	ザ	シ	ス	セ	ソ			132	㉑	㉒	㉓	㉔	㉕	㉖	㉗	㉘	176	閑	榎	厭	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨	
019	★	○	●	◇	◇	▲	▼	※	〒	053	ゴ	タ	チ	ヂ	ツ	ゼ	デ			133	㉙	㉚	㉛	㉜	㉝	㉞	㉟	㊱	㊲	177	掩	援	沿	演	焰	煙	燕	縁	猿
020	◆	□	■	▲	▼	※	〒			054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ハ			134	㊳	㊴	㊵	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	㊺	178	艶	苑	園	演	焰	煙	燕	縁		
021	→	←	↑	↓	⇄	⇄	⇄			055	ヒ	ビ	フ	ブ	メ	ペ	ホ			135	㋅	㋆	㋇	㋈	㋉	㋊	㋋	㋌											
022								⇄	⇄	⇄										136									179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
023	ㄱ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㄴ						056	ボ	ヨ	ミ	ム	ヘ	ヤ	ウ			137	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	㋀	㋁	㋂	㋃	180	押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鶯	
024		ㄱ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㄴ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㄴ	ㄷ	057	ユ	ヨ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ワ			138	㋄	㋅	㋆	㋇	㋈	㋉	㋊	㋋	181	鵬	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	億	桶	
										058	ユ	ヨ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ワ			139	㋌	㋍	㋎	㋏	㋐	㋑	㋒	㋓	182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穩	音		
026	ㄱ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㄴ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㄴ	ㄷ	ㄹ	060		A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H	Θ	I																			
027	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	061	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ	O	P	Σ	T		160	垂	唾	娃	哀	愛	挨	達	逢	183	仮	何	伽	伽	佳	加	嘉	夏	嫁
028	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	062	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					161	葵	茜	穉	愚	握	渥	旭	芦	184	家	寡	榎	伽	伽	加	歌	荷	珂	
029	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	∞	063										162	梓	压	幹	拔	宛	姐	虹	給	185	禍	寡	榎	伽	伽	加	歌	荷	菓	
031										064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	163	貼	或	粟	裕	安	庵	按	暗	186	蝦	課	嘩	画	画	画	霞	俄	峨
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			164	鞍	杏							187	介	牙	会	解	回	芽	蛾	雅	怪	
033																																							
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	070	A	B	C	D	E	F	G			164									188	恢	懷	戒	拐	改					
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	071	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	R	165	威	尉	惟	慰	易	椅	為	異	189	魁	開	階	械	凱	凱	外	咳	芥
036										072	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z			166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	190	蟹	開	階	械	凱	凱	外	咳	芥	
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	073	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з			167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壹	191	慨	概	涯	垣	蓋	街	鉤	鉤	渾	
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	074										168	稻	茨	芋	鰯	允	咽	員	因	192	聲	蛙	垣	桤	蛭	鉤	鉤	鉤	渾	
039	z									075	б	в	г	д	е	ж	з			169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭				193	聲	蛙	垣	桤	蛭	鉤	鉤	鉤	渾	
040	あ	い	う	え	お					076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р			170	院	陰	隱	隱	時				194	聲	蛙	垣	桤	蛭	鉤	鉤	鉤	渾	
041	お	か	が	き	く	け	こ			077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ы											195	額	掛	笠	壺	梶	鰻	湯	割	喝		
042	ご	さ	じ	し	す	せ	そ			078	ю	я								170									196	恰	括	活	滑	滑	葛	褐	葛	旦	
																														197	恰	括	活	滑	滑	葛	褐	葛	旦



First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit											
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
326	接	撰	折	設	窃	節	說	雪	絶	川	357	中	仲	宙	忠	昼	柱	注	虫	衷		413	評	鈔	廟	描	病	秒	苗	鉅	蒜	
327	蟬	仙	先	千	占	宣	專	川	戰	358	註	耐	銑	駐	櫓	猪	苧	苧	著	貯		414	蛙	鱉	品	彬	次	瀕	鉅	實	頻	
328	扇	撰	桢	杲	桢	桢	洗	染	煎	359	丁	兆	洞	喋	龍							415	敏	瓶								
329	煽	織	穿	穿	穿	線				360		帖	帳	行	吊	張	彫	愆	挑													
330	纖	羨	豚	豚	豚	船	薦	詮	踐	361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	賑	腸	蝶													
331	選	選	錢	錢	錢	鮮	前	漸	然	362	調	謀	超	跳	銑	長	頂	鳥	勅	抄												
332	全	禪	繕	膳	膳					363	直	朕	沈	珍	貨	鎮	陳															
	そ										つ										な											
332										363																						
333	曾	楚	狙	疏	礎	祖	祖	粗	素	364	槌	追	鎚	通	塚	捆	規	佃														
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	湖	僧	創	双	叢	365	漬	柘	辻	葛	綴	鍔	漬	坪	壺													
335	倉	喪	壯	奏	爽	宋	屠	臣	惣	366	嬌	紬	爪	吊	鈎	鶴																
336	搜	掃	掃	掃	掃	早	曹	梟	槽																							
337	槽	燥	爭	瘦	相	窓	糴	綜	聰	366																						
338	草	莊	葬	薈	藻	裝	走	送	遭	367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	庭	廷	弟													
339	霜	騷	像	憎	憎					368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締												
340	臧	藏	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息	369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	通																	
341	捉	束	臆	逮	速	俗	屬	賊	統	370	邸	鄧	訂	鼎	泥	摘	敵	滴														
342	卒	袖	其	掄	存	孫	尊	損	村	371	的	笛	適	溺	哲	徹	徹	送														
	た									372	鉄	典	填	天	展	添	纏	甜	貼													
343	他	多	汰	記	唾	墮	妥	情	打	373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澁	電															
344	柁	舵	橈	陀	駝	駝	駝	堆	耐																							
345	岱	帶	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	胎	373																						
346	腿	谷	袋	貸	退	隊	黛	鯛	代	374	堵	塗	妬	妬	斗	弩	度	登	奴													
347	臆	大	第	醒	鷹	滝	鯛	才	啄	375	賭	途	都	冬	凍	搭	東	塔	棟													
348	宅	托	托	沢	沢	濯	琢	託	濁	376	怒	倒	党	凍	投	搭	東	塔	棟													
349	諾	耳	風	哨	只					377	宕	易	島	嶋	悼	燈	登	宕	拷													
350	叩	叩	叩	叩	叩	叩	叩	叩	叩	378																						
351	棚	谷	狸	鰐	誰	誰	誰	誰	誰	379	答	筒	統	統	到																	
352	綻	探	旦	欺	淡	湛	炭	短	竿	380																						
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	團	彈	斷	381																						
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					382																						
	ち									383																						
354										384																						
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蚬	遲	馳	385																						
356	畜	竹	筑	遂	秩	筵	茶	嬌	着	386																						



[illegible]






















First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
562	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	598	梵	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	634	瀏	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟
563	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	599	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	635	瀏	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟	瀟
564	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	600	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	636	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
565	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	601	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	637	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
566	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	602	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	638	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
567	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	603	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	639	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
568	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	604	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	640	炮	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟	烟
569	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	605	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	641	爲	文	型	型	型	型	型	型	型	型
570	愆	惶	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	愆	606	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	栲	642	犟	犟	犟	犟	犟	犟	犟	犟	犟	犟
571	扞	扞	扞	扞	扞	扞	扞	扞	扞	607	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	643	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎
572	抓	抓	抓	抓	抓	抓	抓	抓	抓	608	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	644	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎
573	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	609	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	645	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎
574	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	610	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	646	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎	狎
575	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	拈	611	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	647	琅	琅	琅	琅	琅	琅	琅	琅	琅	琅
576	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	612	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	樺	648	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠
577	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	613	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	649	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠	瑠
578	攝	攝	攝	攝	攝	攝	攝	攝	攝	614	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	歎	650	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆	玆
579	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	615	殢	殢	殢	殢	殢	殢	殢	殢	殢	殢	651	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋
580	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	揅	616	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	652	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋	齋
581	舉	舉	舉	舉	舉	舉	舉	舉	舉	617	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	氣	653	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
582	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	618	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	654	疊	疊	疊	疊	疊	疊	疊	疊	疊	疊
583	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	攢	619	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	655	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡
584	敵	敵	敵	敵	敵	敵	敵	敵	敵	620	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	汨	656	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡	瘡
585	斷	斷	斷	斷	斷	斷	斷	斷	斷	621	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	657	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋	瘋
586	易	易	易	易	易	易	易	易	易	622	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	洽	658	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩
587	易	易	易	易	易	易	易	易	易	623	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	659	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩
588	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	624	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	660	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩
589	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	625	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	661	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩
590	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	晷	626	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	淅	662	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩	癩
591	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	627	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	663	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
592	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	628	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	664	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
593	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	629	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	665	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
594	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	630	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	666	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
595	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	631	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	667	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
596	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	632	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	668	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈
597	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	戔	633	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	混	669	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈	眈





First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit											
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
706	聚	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	742	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	778	逅	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
707	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	743	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	779	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
708	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	744	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	780	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
709	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	745	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	781	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
710	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	746	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	782	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
711	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	747	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	783	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
712	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	748	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	784	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
713	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	749	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	785	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
714	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	750	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	786	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
715	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	751	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	787	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
716	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	752	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	788	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
717	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	753	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	789	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
718	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	754	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	790	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
719	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	755	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	791	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
720	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	756	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	792	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
721	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	757	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	793	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
722	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	758	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	794	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
723	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	759	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	795	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
724	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	760	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	796	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
725	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	761	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	797	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
726	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	762	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	798	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
727	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	763	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	799	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
728	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	764	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	800	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
729	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	765	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	801	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
730	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	766	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	802	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
731	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	767	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	803	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
732	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	768	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	804	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
733	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	769	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	805	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
734	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	770	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	806	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
735	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	771	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	807	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
736	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	772	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	808	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
737	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	773	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	809	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
738	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	774	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	810	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
739	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	775	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	811	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
740	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	776	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	812	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺
741	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	聿	777	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	蟻	813	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺	迺

Weather Indicator List





Basic Status

	Clear skies (day)
	Clear skies (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder showers
	Chance of rain: 0%
	Chance of rain: 10%
	Chance of rain: 20%
	Chance of rain: 30%
	Chance of rain: 40%
	Chance of rain: 50%
	Chance of rain: 60%
	Chance of rain: 70%
	Chance of rain: 80%
	Chance of rain: 90%
	Chance of rain: 100%
	Then
	Partly/chance of





Pollen Count

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme





Cherry Blossom

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall




Fall Foliage

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating




Ultraviolet

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

Typhoon

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

Other

	Heavy rain
	Gale
	Notification



Specifications

SoftBank 945SH

Weight*	124 g (140 g with battery)
Continuous Talk Time*	210 minutes (3G) 210 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time*	370 hours (3G) 350 hours (GSM) (clamshell closed)
Continuous TV Reception Time*	4.5 hours
Charging Time (power off)*	AC Charger: 140 minutes In-Car Charger: 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	51.5 x 112.5 x 16.9-18.2 mm (clamshell closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

*Approximate value.

- Above values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level:2**.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with clamshell closed without calls or operations, in strong signal conditions without moving handset. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting and Mobile Widget Auto Refresh set to **Off**.

- Continuous TV Reception Time is measured with a new, fully charged battery, with AV Mode (default: **Link to Genre**) set to **Standard** (Brightness: **2**, Tone: **Normal**) and Smooth Mode (default: **On**) set to **Off** in Viewer position with Headphones connected to External Device Port, until battery runs low (10% of capacity).
- Talk Time/Standby Time/TV Reception Time may vary with environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

Handset Materials

Parts	Materials/Finishing
Housing (Display side, Keypad side, battery side), Battery Cover	Nylon resin/Acrylic UV painting
Housing (back)	Aluminum/Anodized aluminum (Acrylic UV painting for White)
Display window, lens cover	Acrylic resin
Sub Display panel	PC resin & UV hard coating

Parts	Materials/Finishing
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys), Center Key, Mail Key, Shortcuts & Spinguru Menu Key, Dictionary Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, TV & HDMI Key, Camera Key, key ornament sheets (Keypad side), camera ring, Clear/Back Key, Start & Rakutomo Link Key, Keypad, ✕ Key, Power On/Off & End Key, # Key	UV curing resin
Side Keys (Volume Up Key, Volume Down Key, Keypad Lock & Shutter Key)	PC resin/Discontinuous deposition, acrylic UV painting
Camera ornament	PC resin/UV hard coating/Tin deposition & overprinting (back)
Camera ornament (Infrared Port)	PC resin/UV hard coating/infrared permeable printing (back)
HDMI Port Cover, External Device Port Cover	Elastomeric resin/Acrylic UV painting
Battery	PC & ABS resin
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws	SWCH16A/Black Ni plating
USIM pins	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)



Accessories

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	800 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	34.2 x 47.1 x 4.6 mm (without protruding parts)

Approximate value.

■ Desktop Holder

Input Voltage/Current	DC 5.4V/700 mA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.4V/700 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	130 x 28 x 62 mm

Approximate value.

Basic Operations

■ Standby Shortcut

Standby	16 (shared with widgets)*
Icon View	100 (16 per page including widgets)

Excluding S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status, Pedometer and Household Accounts.

Universal Operations, Etc.

■ Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	30,720 single-byte characters
Dictionary	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

■ Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

Calling

Call Log Records	Dialed: 30 Dialed Ranking: 10 Received: 30
Answer Phone/Record Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses
Rakutomo Link	10 numbers/addresses

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	5 MB (or 1,000 messages between Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages)
	Sent Messages	
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	104 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)

PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumeric	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 2 MB*	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
Chat Folder	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)
Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)	
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses Reply Message: 256 single-byte characters per mode	
Sort Spam Mail	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

*Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

■ PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses



Internet

Download (Yahoo! Keitai)	500 KB per page	
	10 MB (100 MB via Keitai Wi-Fi) for progressive downloads	
Download (PC Site Browser) ¹	JPEG Images	3 MB
	Flash® Files	2 MB
Download (Direct Browser) ¹	JPEG Images	5,000 KB
	Flash® Files	2 MB
History	300 pages for Yahoo! Keitai	
	300 pages between PC Site Browser and Direct Browser	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks ² & Saved Pages	100 pages for Yahoo! Keitai	
	100 pages between PC Site Browser and Direct Browser	
Tab	5 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	20 URLs	
RSS Feeds	30 entries (60 KB per entry)	

¹ 1 MB each for files other than JPEG images and Flash® files. (Some media files are playable beyond 1 MB.)

² Folders are counted as pages.

Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)	
Recording Time (example)	Handset	Approximately 30 minutes
	Memory Card	Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)	
Split File	99 portions per file	
Time Shift Recording	30 minutes	
Reservation List	5 entries (24 hours each on 1 GB or larger Memory Card)	

Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	12.1 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 25x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	12M	3000 x 4000
	8M	2448 x 3264
	5M	1944 x 2592
	3M	1536 x 2048
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	Wallpaper	480 x 854
	VGA	480 x 640
	QVGA	240 x 320
Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	
File Format	JPEG	
Memory	Approximately 25 files (at 12M, High Quality) on handset with no other files	

File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm
Background Save	3 files
Portrait Auto Focus	VGA or larger

Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 5.7x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	HD	1280 x 720
	Wide	864 x 480
	VGA	640 x 480
	QVGA	320 x 240
	QCIF	176 x 144
File Format	3GP	
Recording Capacity per Shot	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card (with HD Video Camera at Normal quality)	
	Video Camera for Mail	2 MB or 295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	
Still Image Capture	3 images	
Recording Pause Supported	HD Video Camera, Pro Auto Video Camera	

*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.



■ Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (480 x 854) Power On/Off (480 x 854) Incoming Call (320 x 320) Alarm (480 x 208) Mail Art (96 x 96) VGA (480 x 640) QVGA (240 x 320) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots
	Panorama	

Video & Music

Supported Formats	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
All Music List	Music	Shows up to 350 files each
	Chaku-Uta®	
	WMA	Shows up to 999 files
	SD AUDIO	

S! Applications & Widgets

■ S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 104 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
Remote Control	Approximately 5 m

■ Mobile Widget

Standby	6 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, Pedometer: 1, Household Accounts: 1, others: 3)
Icon View (40 pages)	Handset widgets: 100 Memory Card widgets: 100 (16 per page including Standby Shortcuts)

Handy Extras

■ PIM/Life

Calendar ¹ /Tasks	Schedule: 1,000 entries Tasks: 300 entries Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off Approximately 30 minutes
Household Accounts	3,285 entries ² (9,999,999 yen each)
Calculator	999,999,999,999
Expenses Memo	50 entries (999,999.99 yen each) per list x 3 lists
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics

¹ Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of May 2010.

² Limit may be lower depending on the number of items in each entry.

■ Clock/Gauge

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters

Pedometer	Today's Data	Steps: 99,999 Walking Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 71.9 Ex Calories: 9,999.9 kcal Distance: 179.9 km Fat Burned: 999.9 g
	Log	2 years Hourly view: 9,999 steps per hour Daily view: 99,999 steps per day
	Accumulated Data	All Days: 999 days Steps: 99,999,999 Time: 99,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 99,999.9 Ex Calories: 9,999,999.9 kcal Distance: 999,999.9 km Fat burned: 999,999.9 g
	Average	Steps: 99,999 Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds Exercise: 71.9 Ex Calories: 9,999.9 kcal Distance: 179.9 km Fat burned: 999.9 g
	S! GPS Navi	My Location 50 entries



■ Doc./Rec.

Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad	500 entries	(8,192 characters each)
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 20 minutes (message size limit: 2 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji	
Scan Text	256 characters	

Entertainment

■ S! Quick News

Savable Items	1 item for Special
	5 items between News Flash and General

■ e-Books

Text Copy	20 characters
-----------	---------------

■ S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters
	Comment: 15 characters
	Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

■ S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Title	16 characters	
Blog Settings (Mail)	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser & Direct Browser)	URL for Posting	1,024 characters
	URL for Viewing	1,024 characters

Data Folder

Memory	104 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and S! Appli Library)
--------	--

Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/letters)
------------------	----------------------------------

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

Connectivity & File Backup

■ Wi-Fi

Profile	10 entries
Authentication Method	Open System, Shared Key, WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA/WPA2-PSK Auto
Encryption Method	No Authentication, WEP, TKIP, AES, TKIP/AES Auto
WEP Key	4 keys

■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm
IrSS Transfer (JPEG images)	Receive 2,500 KB or less; send 5,000 KB or less (after resizing)	

■ Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.1
Supported Profiles	Headset Profile
	Hands-Free Profile
	Dial-Up Networking Profile
	Object Push Profile
	File Transfer Profile
	Basic Imaging Profile
	Advanced Audio Distribution Profile
	Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Range	Within 10 m
Device Search	16 devices
Pairing	32 devices
Device Name	16 characters
Printing	JPEG/PNG images

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 synchronization records
-----	----------------------------

Network

Add Network	5 Networks
	Country/Network code: 3 digits
	Name: 25 single-byte characters



Reference URLs

- **SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**
<http://mb.softbank.jp/en/>
- **S! Addressbook Back-up**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html
- **Messaging Basics**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html
- **Custom Handset Address**
<https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html>
- **Yahoo! Keitai**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html
- **Ichi Navi**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html
- **Secure Remote Lock**
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html
- **microSD Memory Card Compatibility**
 From PC (Japanese)
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
 From Handset (Japanese)
<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>
- **Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders**
 From PC (Japanese)
http://www.sharp.co.jp/support/av/dvd/doc/info_cellular.html
- **SVG-T**
 From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svg/index_pdc.html
- **Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting**
 From PC
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>
 From Handset (Japanese)
<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>
- **SOFTBANK TELECOM Corp. (BB mobilepoint)**
 From PC
<http://tm.softbank.jp/english/consumer/wlan/index.html>
- **ケータイ daSH**
 From PC (Japanese)
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>
- **HDMI Cable Compatibility**
 From PC (Japanese)
<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/guide.html>



Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure			Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP		Still images in DCIM
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents	SD Local Contents
		Mail	Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
		My Items	Book
			e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks
			Bookmark backup files
			Character
			PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			Custom Screens
			Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)
			Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones
			Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More
			S! Applications
			Hot Status Template
			Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art
			Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
			Message Templates
			Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music
			Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents
			Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms
			GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures
			Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones
			Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)
			Videos
			Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
			Widget
			Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)
			WMAudio
			WMA files for Media Player (WMA)
		SH_Folder	Application management files
		Utility	Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE	Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.
SD_AUDIO			SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)



Menu List

Messaging

Function		Refer to
Received Msg.		P.5-16
Create Message		P.5-4
Retrieve New Msg.		P.5-28
Drafts		P.5-34
Templates		P.5-9
Sent Messages		P.5-16
Unsent Messages		P.5-34
Chat Folder		P.5-19
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.5-28
	Retrieve All	P.5-28
	Delete All	P.5-32
	Mailbox Volume	P.5-35
Create New SMS		P.5-11
Settings	Address Settings	P.5-3
	View Settings	P.5-35
	Receive Settings	P.5-15
	Create/Send Settings	P.5-12
	PC Mail Settings	P.5-22
	SMS Settings	P.5-40
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.5-24
	Mail Groups	P.5-20
Memory Status		P.5-31

Settings: View Settings

Function	Refer to
Received Msg. View	P.5-35
Sent Msg. View	P.5-35
Message List View	P.5-35
Scroll Unit	P.5-35
Auto Play Attached Sound	P.5-35
Picture Appearance	P.5-35
Animation View	P.5-35
Address View	P.5-35

Settings: Receive Settings

Function		Refer to
Message Download	DL Size Limit	P.5-36
	Auto Settings	P.5-15
	Condition(Auto)	P.5-36
Auto Delete Received Msg.		P.5-36
Other Than Standby Screen	Incoming Display Setting	P.5-36
	View Setting	P.5-36
	Alert Sound	P.5-36
Secret Folder		P.5-36
Link to Feeling	Standby Screen Info.	P.5-36
	Set Illumi.	P.5-36
	Vibration Pattern	P.5-37
	Ringtone	P.5-37
Spam Mail Settings	Sort Spam Mail	P.5-18
	Report Spam	P.5-37

Settings: Create/Send Settings

Function		Refer to
Create Msg. Size		P.5-37
Picture Auto Resize		P.5-37
Sending Status		P.5-37
Auto Resend		P.5-37
Auto Delete Sent Msg.		P.5-37
Send Option	Delivery Report	P.5-37
	Reply to Settings	P.5-38
Reply Settings	Reply With Text	P.5-38
	Auto Reply	P.5-31
	Set Quick Reply	P.5-30
Send File Settings		P.5-38
Restrictions Setting		P.5-12

Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.5-22
PC Mail DL	P.5-38
Check New Mail	P.5-38
Word wrap	P.5-39

Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.5-40
Message Center	P.5-40
Char-code	P.5-40



Yahoo!	
Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
Menu List	P.6-3
Bookmarks	P.6-9
Saved Pages	P.6-9
Web Search	P.6-12
Enter URL	P.6-4
History	P.6-4
PC Site Browser	P.6-5
Direct Browser	P.6-5
Browser Settings	P.6-13

■ PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.6-5
Bookmarks	P.6-9
Saved Pages	P.6-9
Web Search	P.6-12
Enter URL	P.6-5
History	P.6-5
RSS Feed	P.6-10
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
Direct Browser	P.6-5

PC Site Browser Settings	Function	Refer to
	Font Size	P.6-13
	Scroll Settings	P.6-14
	Cursor Settings	P.6-13
	Downloads	P.6-13
	Memory Operation	P.6-11
	Security Settings	P.6-18
	Download to	P.6-13
	Picture Appearance	P.6-13
	Initialized Browser	P.6-18
	Reset Settings	P.6-18
	Warning Message	P.6-14
	Zoom Factor	P.6-13
	Softkey Area	P.6-13

■ Direct Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.6-5
Bookmarks	P.6-9
Saved Pages	P.6-9
Web Search	P.6-12
Enter URL	P.6-5
History	P.6-5
RSS Feed	P.6-10
Yahoo! Keitai	P.6-3
PC Site Browser	P.6-5

Set Direct Browser	Function	Refer to
	Font Size	P.6-13
	Scroll Settings	P.6-14
	Cursor Settings	P.6-13
	Downloads	P.6-13
	Memory Operation	P.6-11
	Security Settings	P.6-18
	Download to	P.6-13
	Picture Appearance	P.6-13
	Initialized Browser	P.6-18
	Reset Settings	P.6-18
	Zoom Factor	P.6-13
	Softkey Area	P.6-13
	Direct Browser Lock	P.6-14
	Proxy Setting	P.6-14
	Homepage Setting	P.6-14
	Search Page	P.6-14

■ Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.6-13
Scroll Unit	P.6-14
Cursor Settings	P.6-13
Downloads	P.6-13
Memory Operation	P.6-11
Security Settings	P.6-18
Download to	P.6-13
Page Settings	P.6-13
Initialized Browser	P.6-18
Reset Settings	P.6-18



S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.10-2
Osaifu-Keitai	P.11-20
Settings	P.10-7
Information	P.10-7

■ Settings

Function		Refer to
Application Volume		P.10-6
Backlight		P.10-7
Vibration		P.10-7
Synchronization		P.10-7
Calls & Alarms		P.10-6
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.10-6
	Activation Time	P.10-6
	Stop Auto Start	P.10-6
Surround		P.10-6
Reset Settings		P.10-7
Memory All Clear		P.10-7

Entertainment

Function		Refer to
S! Information Channel/ Weather	What's New	P.12-3
	Back Issue	P.12-3
	Registration/Cancel	P.12-3
	Get Latest Contents	P.12-13
	Notification	P.12-13
	Weather Indicator	P.12-3
S! Quick News		P.12-2
Free Contents		P.12-4
S! Contents Store		P.12-4
Media Player	Music	P.9-5
	Videos	P.9-6
	Streaming	P.6-4
	MTP Mode	P.9-4
S! Friend's Status		P.12-6
S! Circle Talk		P.12-9
Blog Tool		P.12-11
Digital Media Viewer		P.12-5
BookSurfing		P.12-5
e-Book Viewer		P.12-5

■ S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		P.12-14
Manual Update		P.12-3
Settings	Standby Setting	P.12-14
	Weather Notif.	P.12-14
	Icon Update	P.12-14

■ S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.12-2
Settings	Automatic Update	P.12-13
	Show Image	P.12-13
	Check Schedule	P.12-13
	Change Skin	P.12-13
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.12-13

■ Media Player: Music

Function		Refer to
Last Played Music		P.9-8
My Music		P.9-5
SD AUDIO		P.9-5
WMA		P.9-5
Download Music		P.9-4
Settings	Sound Effects	P.9-8
	Playback Mode	P.9-8
	Music Illumination	P.9-8
	Ⓢound Output	P.9-8
	Delete All WMA	P.9-10



Media Player: Videos

Function		Refer to
Last Played Video		P.9-8
My Videos		P.9-6
Golf Swing Play		P.8-20
Recorder Contents		P.9-6
SD VIDEO		P.9-6
Download Videos		P.9-4
Settings	Playback Mode	P.9-8
	Backlight	P.9-9
	Display Size	P.9-9
	Sound Effects	P.9-9
	Web Link Setting	P.9-9
	ⓂSound Output	P.9-8

Camera

Function	Refer to
Easy Auto Camera	P.8-3
Pro Auto Camera	P.8-6
Quick Camera	P.8-7
Rapid Shooting Camera	P.8-9
HD Video Camera	P.8-17
Video Camera for Mail	P.8-19
Pro Auto Video Camera	P.8-5
Golf Swing Video Camera	P.8-20
Various Cameras	P.8-9
Best Select Photo	P.8-11
Album	P.8-24
Scan Receipt	P.11-15
Scan Barcode	P.11-39
Scan Card	P.11-41
Kanji/English Grabber	P.11-43

Function	Refer to
Review	P.8-27
Set Camera Key	P.8-35

Photo Camera (Example: Pro Auto Camera)

Function		Refer to
Switch Camera		P.8-9
Detect Personal		P.8-15
Self-timer		P.8-35
Picture Size		P.8-35
Focus Setting		P.8-35
Shutter Settings	Egao level	P.8-36
	Shutter Mode	P.8-36
	Shutter Sound	P.8-36
	Set Remote Shutter	P.8-35
Settings	Picture Quality	P.8-36
	ISO Sensitivity	P.8-36
	White Balance	P.8-36
	Exposure	P.8-36
	Shake Reducing	P.8-36
	Long Exposure	P.8-36
	Display Setting	P.8-36
	Set Send Key	P.8-36
Album		P.8-24
Save Settings	Save Pictures to	P.8-36
	Auto Save	P.8-36
	Background Save	P.8-36
Scene		P.8-11
Help		P.8-35
Mobile Light		P.8-36

Video Camera (Example: Pro Auto Video Camera)

Function		Refer to
Switch Camera		P.8-9
Simple Setting		P.8-17
Self-timer		P.8-38
Picture Size		P.8-39
Focus Setting		P.8-38
Shake Reducing		P.8-39
Settings	Video Quality	P.8-38
	Exposure	P.8-38
	Microphone	P.8-39
	Microphone Mode	P.8-39
	Video/Audio Encode	P.8-39
	Display Setting	P.8-38
	ND Filter Setting	P.8-39
Review		P.8-27
Save Settings	Save Videos to	P.8-38
	Auto Save	P.8-38
Scene		P.8-18
Help		P.8-38
Mobile Light		P.8-38

Videos/Music

Function	Refer to
Videos/Music	P.9-2



Tools

■ PIM/Life

Function	Refer to
Calendar	P.11-2
Exchange Profile	P.15-10
Alarms	P.11-8
Wakeup TV	P.11-10
Charging Theater	P.11-12
Relaxation Time	P.11-13
Tasks	P.11-6
Household Accounts	P.11-14
Calculator	P.11-18
Expenses Memo	P.11-19
Osaifu-Keitai	P.11-20

Simulated Call	Receive Simulated Call	P.11-51
	Switch On/Off	P.11-24
	Set Caller	P.11-24
	Assign Tone	P.11-24
	Receive Timing	P.11-24
	For Silent Mode	P.11-51

■ PIM/Life: Osaifu-Keitai

Function		Refer to
Lifestyle-Appli		P.11-20
IC Card Settings	IC Card Status	P.11-50
	IC Card Lock	P.11-21
	Remote Lock	P.11-22
	Interface Settings	P.11-50
	Balance Info	P.11-50
	Reset Settings	P.11-51

■ Clock/Gauge

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.11-25
Countdown Timer	P.11-26
World Clock	P.11-27
Hour Minder	P.11-28
Pedometer	P.11-29
Compass	P.11-31
SI GPS Navi	P.11-32
Battery Meter	P.2-22

■ Doc./Rec.

Function	Refer to
Dictionary	P.3-13
Search	P.3-16
Document Viewer	P.11-35
Notepad	P.11-36
Scratch Pad	P.3-17
ASCII Art	P.11-37

Voice Recorder	Record Time	P.11-54
	Ring Songs-Tones	P.11-38
	Save Recording to	P.11-54

Barcode/Scan	Scan Barcode	P.11-39
	Open Barcode	P.11-55
	Create QR Code	P.11-40
	Scan Card	P.11-41
	Scan Receipt	P.11-15
	Kanji/English Grabber	P.11-43
	Scan Text	P.11-42
	Scanned Results	P.11-55

Phone Help	P.2-22
------------	--------

■ Connectivity

Function		Refer to
Wi-Fi		P.15-2
Bluetooth		P.15-13
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.15-8
	Send All	P.15-9
	IrSS Key Setting	P.15-26
IC Transmission	1 File Reception	P.15-26
	Send All	P.15-12
HDMI Connection	Start HDMI Connection	P.15-19
	HDMI Output Size Setting	P.15-28
	HDMI Output Incoming Call	P.15-28
	AQUOS Familink Setting	P.15-28
USB Mode	Mass Storage	P.15-17
	Recorder Link	P.15-17
	MTP Mode	P.9-4
USB Charge		P.1-5
Memory Card		P.14-6
Backup/Restore		P.15-21

■ Connectivity: Wi-Fi

Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.15-25
Create Profile	P.15-3
Profile List	P.15-25
Common Settings	P.15-25
Connect Information	P.15-25
Show MAC Address	P.15-25
Application	P.15-25
What's Keitai Wi-Fi?	P.15-25



■ Connectivity: Bluetooth

Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.15-27
Add Device	P.15-14
Paired Devices	P.15-15
Send All	P.15-16
Setting Watch	P.15-27
My Device Settings	P.15-26
My Device Details	P.15-27

Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.8-28
DCIM	P.14-2
Ring Songs-Tones	P.11-38
S! Appli	P.10-2
Widget	P.10-3
Music	P.14-2
Videos	P.14-2
Lifestyle-Appli	P.11-20
Books	P.14-2
Customized Screen	P.3-4
Status Templates	P.14-2
Flash@	P.14-2
Other Documents	P.14-2
Memory Status	P.14-2

Widget


Function		Refer to
Widget Store		P.10-4
Widget Contents		P.10-4
Settings	Remove Contents	P.10-4
	Auto Refresh	P.10-9
	AutoConnect Abroad	P.10-9
	Set Use Abroad	P.10-9
	Cookies	P.10-9
	Delete Cookies	P.10-9

TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.7-4
TV Player	P.7-9
TV-Image Folder	P.7-6
TV Link	P.7-14
TV Listing	P.7-7
Familink Remote	P.1-3
Reservation List	P.7-10
HDMI Connection	P.15-18
Recorder Contents	P.7-16
Settings	P.7-13

■ Settings

Function		Refer to
TV Alarm		P.7-17
Broadcast Data	Set Recording	P.7-15
	Image Location	P.7-15
	Notify Connection	P.7-14
	Location	P.7-14
	Manufacture Number	P.7-14
	Delete StationData	P.7-14

Function		Refer to
Screen Size(Portrait)		P.7-12
Display Icon		P.7-13
Sound Output		P.7-13
 Sound Output		P.7-13
Set Call Time Shift		P.7-15
Calls & Alarms		P.7-13
TV Reserve Prior		P.7-17
Save Recording to		P.7-15
Auto Exit	Auto Exit Time	P.7-13
	Close Action	P.7-13
Smooth Mode		P.7-12

Phone

Function	Refer to	
Phone Book	P.3-18	
Add New Entry	P.3-18	
Information	P.1-8	
Call Log	P.4-8	
Play Messages	P.4-4	
Call Voicemail	P.4-13	
SI Addressbook Back-up	P.15-22	
My Details	P.2-22	
Set Category	P.3-19	
Mail Groups	P.5-20	
Rakutomo Link	P.4-7	
Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-6	
Touch-Tone Signal List	P.4-19	
Settings/ Manage	Ph.Book Settings	P.3-20
	Call Log Setting	P.4-17
	Manage Entries	P.3-25



Settings

■ Sound/Display

Function	Refer to
Mode Settings	P.2-28
Display	P.16-3
Customized Screen	P.3-4
Sounds & Alerts	P.3-5
Date & Time	P.16-2
言語選択 (Language)	P.16-3
Ringer Output	P.16-6
Earpiece Volume	P.4-15
Change Menu	P.2-9

■ Sound/Display: Display

Function	Refer to
Wallpaper	P.3-3
System Graphics	P.16-3
VeilView	P.2-29
Display Effects	P.16-3
Font Settings	P.3-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar
	Show Widget
	Display Status Icon
	Show Operator Name
Charging Theater	Switch On/Off
	Switch Photo/Video
	Playback Time
	Video Sound Output
	Video Repeat
Vivid Mode	P.16-3
Mini Battery	P.2-29

Function	Refer to
Greeting Message	P.16-3
Sub-Display	P.1-15
Backlight	P.16-3
Display Saving	P.16-3
Caller Display	P.16-3
Dial Number	P.16-3

■ Sound/Display: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.16-5
Ringtone/videos	P.3-5
Machi-Uta	P.3-21
System Sounds	P.16-6
Vibration	P.3-5
Set Illumination	P.16-4
Any Key Answer	P.16-5
Surround	P.16-6

■ Sound/Display: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.16-2
Time Correction	P.16-2
Daylight Saving	P.16-2
Set Time Zone	P.16-2
Clock/Calendar	P.16-4
World Clock	P.11-27
Alarms	P.11-8
Set Holiday	P.11-44
Time Format	P.16-2
Date Format	P.16-2
Calendar Format	P.16-2

■ Phone/

Function	Refer to
User Dictionary	P.3-12
Set Key Shortcut	P.2-13
Viewer Position	P.2-17
Motion Control	P.2-19
Touch Panel	Switch On/Off
	Touch Reaction
	Keypad Lock
	Correct Touch Panel
Set Key Light	P.16-4
Double Number	Switch On/Off
	Double Mode
	Mode Name
	Reject By Line
	Show Missed
	Packet Warning
	Send Priority
Videos/Music Menu Updates	P.9-2
Memory Card	P.14-6
Backup/Restore	Backup All Items
	Backup Selected Items
	Restore All Items
	Restore Selected Items
	File Management
	Settings
Locks	P.13-2
Software Update	P.17-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings
	Reset All




■ Phone/☎ : Memory Card

	Function	Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.8-34
	Settings	P.8-41
	Check Settings	P.8-34
	Reset Settings	P.8-41
	SD Local Contents	P.14-9
	Format Card	P.14-6
	Memory Status	P.14-2

■ Phone/☎ : Locks

	Function	Refer to
	PIN Entry	P.13-2
	Function Lock	P.13-2
	IP Service Setting	P.16-7
	Function Control	P.13-4
	Application Lock	P.13-3
	History Lock	P.13-3
	Show Secret Data	P.13-3
	Set Lock Message	P.13-5
Handset Code Setting	Need/UnNeed Setting	P.1-14
	Save Handset Code	P.1-13
	Administrator Setting	P.1-14

■ Call

	Function	Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.4-9
	Data Counter	P.4-17
	Call Time Counter	P.4-17
	Minute Minder	P.4-17
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.4-4
	Answer Time	P.4-14
	Outgoing Message	P.4-14
	Volume	P.4-14
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.4-13
	Diverts	P.4-12
	Cancel All	P.4-13
	Status	P.4-18
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.4-20
	Incoming Picture	P.4-20
	Outgoing Picture	P.4-20
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.4-20
	Backlight	P.4-20
	Loudspeaker	P.4-20
	Mute Microphone	P.4-20
	Remote Monitor	P.4-14
	Show My Number	P.4-19
	 Missed Calls	P.4-13
Int'l Calling	Int'l Prefix	P.4-15
	Country Codes	P.4-15
	Roaming Dial Assistant	P.4-15
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.4-19
	Restrict Destinations	P.4-10
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.4-19
	Reject Numbers	P.4-18
	Auto Answer	P.4-19
	Call Waiting	P.4-18

■ Network

	Function	Refer to
	Select Network	P.16-7
	Select Service	P.16-7
	Re-search Signal	P.16-7
	Offline Mode	P.2-21
	Retrieve NW Info	P.16-7
	Network Info	P.16-7
	Wi-Fi	P.15-3
	External Device	P.16-7



Index

A

AC Charger	1-4
Accessing Functions	2-3, 2-13
Accessories	v
Administrator Code	1-13
After-Sales Services	17-42
Alarms	11-8
Canceling	11-9
Deleting	11-9
Editing entries	11-48
For Manner Mode	11-48
Link to World Clk	11-48
Album	8-24
Animation View	5-13
Answer Phone	4-4, 4-14
Any Key Answer	16-5
AOSS™	15-3
Application Lock	13-3
ASCII Art	11-37
Auto Art	5-4
Auto Reply	5-14, 5-31
Auto Resend	5-2, 5-37
Auto Retry Function	5-2

B

Backlight	16-3
Backup	15-20, 15-28
Bar Incoming Calls	4-19
Bar Outgoing Calls	4-19
Battery	1-4, 17-4
Battery Cover	1-2
Battery Meter	2-22
Blog Tool	12-11, 12-16
Bluetooth®	15-13
Blu-ray Disc recorders	7-16, 9-6, 9-11, 15-17
Bookmarks	6-9

BookSurfing®	12-5
--------------------	------

C

Calculator	11-18, 11-50
Calendar	11-2
Calendar Settings	11-44
Editing schedules	11-45
Call Barring	4-12, 4-19
Call Forwarding	4-12
Call Log	4-8, 4-16
Call Time Counter	4-17
Call Waiting	4-12, 4-18
Call Waiting (answering Line 2)	4-18
Caller ID	4-12, 4-19
Camera	8-2
Album	8-24
Capturing Still Images	8-6
Changing/saving camera settings	8-12
Changing/saving video camera settings	8-21
Detect Personal	8-15
Photo Camera settings	8-35
Recording Video	8-17
Review	8-27
Center Access Code	1-13
Change PIN	13-5
Character Code List	17-12
Charging	1-4
Charging Terminals	1-2
Charging Theater	11-12
Chat Folder	5-19, 5-33
Clamshell Closed	1-2
Clamshell Open	1-2
Cleaning (handset)	17-6
Clock/Calendar	16-4
Compass	11-31
Composite	8-32
Countdown Timer	11-26
Create QR Code	11-40

Customer Service	17-43
Customized Screen (Japanese)	3-4

D

Data Broadcast (Japanese)	7-6
Change View (Data)	7-14
Returning to initial window	7-14
Set Recording	7-15
Data Counter	4-17
Data Folder	14-2
Files (attaching)	5-5, 14-3
Files (moving/copying)	14-4
Files (opening)	14-3
Files (renaming)	14-8
Folders (adding)	14-4
Selecting Multiple Files	14-4
Set Secret (folders)	14-4
Slide Show	14-3
Date & Time	16-2
Daylight Saving	11-27, 16-2
Decoration Signature	5-10
Delivery Report	5-13, 5-25, 5-37
Dialing from Call Log records	4-16
Dictionary	3-13
Digital Media Viewer	12-5
Digital TV (→ TV)	7-2
Adding Reception Areas	7-3
Area Setup	7-3
Auto Exit	7-13
AV Settings	7-12
Calls & Alarms	7-13
Change Area	7-12
Program Info. Search	7-12
Screen Size	7-12
Set Channels	7-3, 7-12
Smooth Mode	7-12
Sound Output	7-13
Sound Output	7-13



Subtitle/Sound.....	7-15
Display	1-2, 1-8
Display (settings).....	16-3
Display Effects	16-3
Display Positions	1-2
Display Saving	16-3
Document Viewer.....	11-35
Double Number	2-23, 2-29
Download Dictionary	3-12
DPOF.....	8-34
Add Date	8-41
Check Settings	8-34
For All Pictures.....	8-34
Index Print	8-41
Dual Mode	2-25

E

Earpiece.....	1-2
Earpiece Volume	4-15
e-Book Library	12-14
e-Book Viewer	12-5
e-Books (Japanese).....	12-5, 12-14
Emergency Calls.....	4-2
English.....	16-3
Exchange Profile.....	15-10
Expenses Memo	11-19
External Device Connection	15-17
External Device Port.....	1-2

F

Face Arrange.....	8-30
Feeling Mail (receiving).....	5-13
Feeling Mail (sending).....	5-6
Focus (locking)	8-8, 8-38
Focus Setting	8-35, 8-38
Font Size.....	3-2
Format Card	14-6
Function Control.....	13-4
Function Lock	13-2

G

General Notes	xii
Graphic Mail	5-7
Group Calling	4-12, 4-18
Group Calling (opening another line)	4-18
Guide Usage Notes	ii

H

Handset Code.....	1-13
Handset Keys	1-3
Handset mail address.....	5-3
Handset Parts	1-2
Handset Power On/Off.....	1-7
Handset responses	3-5
HDMI Connection.....	15-18
HDMI Port	1-2
Headphones (answering calls)	4-14
History Lock	13-3
Hold.....	4-14
Hour Minder.....	11-28
Assign Tone/Video	11-52
For Manner Mode.....	11-52
Link to World Clk	11-52
Vibration	11-52
Household Accounts.....	11-14

I

IC Card Lock.....	11-21
IC Card Settings.....	11-21
IC Transmission	15-11
Ichi Navi	11-34
Icon View	2-16
Indicators.....	1-10
Camera (Viewfinder)	8-7, 8-18
Display	1-10
Messaging (message list)	5-14
Music Playback Window.....	9-5
S! Quick News	12-2
Sub Display.....	1-12

Video Playback Window	9-6
Information window	1-8
Infrared	15-7
Receiving files	15-8
Sending files	15-9, 15-26
Infrared Port	1-2
Internal Antenna	1-2
International calls	4-3, 4-15
Internet.....	6-2
Accessing.....	6-3, 6-5
Basic Operations	6-6
Browser Settings	6-13
Enter URL	6-4, 6-5
History	6-4, 6-5
Saving Bookmarks/pages	6-9
Int'l Call	4-4
IP Service Setting	16-7
IrSS Transfer.....	15-7

K

Kanji/English Grabber	11-43
Keypad Lock.....	2-20

L

Language.....	16-3
Large Font Menu	3-2
Light Sensor	1-2, 16-3
Link to Feeling	5-36
Link to World Clk	11-48, 11-52
Locks	1-13, 13-2
Loudspeaker	4-15, 4-20, 12-16

M

Machi-Uta®	3-5
Mail Groups	5-20
Changing members.....	5-34
Deleting	5-34
Edit Name	5-34
Main Menu	2-6
Manner mode	2-21



Mass Storage	15-17
Master Reset	16-8
Format Card	14-6
Reset All	16-8
Reset Settings	16-8
Media Player	9-3
Delete All WMA	9-10
Playlists	9-7, 9-9, 9-10
Memory All Clear (S! Applications)	10-7
Memory Card	14-5
Format Card	14-6
Opening files	14-6
Memory Card Structure & Contents	17-25
Menu List	17-26
Camera	17-29
Data Folder	17-31
Entertainment	17-28
Messaging	17-26
Phone	17-31
S! Appli	17-28
Settings	17-32
Tools	17-30
TV	17-31
Videos/Music	17-29
Widget	17-31
Yahoo!	17-27
Menu Operations	2-6
Message List View	5-35
Messages (creating/sending) ... 5-4, 5-11, 5-23	
Attachments	5-26
Graphic Mail	5-7
Messaging Settings	5-25
Preview Message	5-4
Recipient status	5-24
Recipients (editing)	5-24
Save to Drafts	5-25
Send Reservation	5-25
Sending from Drafts	5-34
Sending unsent messages	5-34
Set Auto Play File	5-27

Set Sent Cancel	5-25
Signature	5-10
Speed Dial/Mail	5-24
Templates	5-9
Using sent messages	5-34
Messages (deleting)	5-23, 5-32
Auto Delete Received Msg.	5-36
Auto Delete Sent Msg.	5-37
Messages (forwarding)	5-34, 5-35
Messages (protecting)	5-16
Messages (receiving/checking)	5-13
Accessing new mail out of Standby	5-28
DL Size Limit	5-36
Mail List	5-28
Message List	5-14, 5-31
Message Window	5-14, 5-29
Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually	5-15
Retrieving PC Mail	5-23, 5-39
Save to Data Folder	5-29
Messages (sorting)	5-18
Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail, PC Mail)	5-2
Create/Send Settings	5-12
PC Mail Settings	5-38
Receive Settings	5-15
SMS Settings	5-40
View Settings	5-35
Microphone	1-2
Minute Minder	4-17
Missed Call Notification	4-13
Mobile Light	1-2
Mobile Widget	10-3
Mode Settings	2-28
Motion Control	2-18
MTP Mode	9-4
Multi Job	2-14
Music (deleting)	9-9, 9-10
Music (downloading)	9-4
Music (playing)	9-5, 9-8
My Details	2-22

Sending via Bluetooth®	15-28
Sending via IC Transmission	15-26
Sending via Infrared	15-26

N

Navi Appli	11-32
Need/UnNeed Setting	1-14
Notepad	11-36
Change Category	11-54
Edit Text	11-54

O

Offline Mode	2-21
Optional Services	4-12
Optional Services (checking status)	4-18
Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)	11-20
Balance Info	11-50
IC Card Settings	11-21
Locking	11-21
Reset Settings	11-51

P

Pager Code List	17-11
PC (connecting handset)	15-17
PC Mail	5-2, 5-21
PC Mail (sending)	5-23
PC Site Browser	6-5
Pedometer	11-29
Pen Light	2-22
Personal Mode	3-8, 3-22
Phone Book (deleting)	3-25
Phone Book (editing)	3-24
Phone Book (saving)	3-18
Phone Book (using)	3-20
Phone Book search	3-20
Phone Help	2-22
Picture Editor	8-28
PIN	17-2
PIN Entry	13-2
PIN Lock	17-2



Playlists	9-7, 9-9, 9-10
Printing	8-34
Printing (Bluetooth®)	8-34
Public wireless LAN services	15-6

Q

Quick Operations	2-3
Quick Phrase	5-5
Quick Silent	2-18

R

Rakutomo Link	4-7
Received Msg. View	5-35
Record Caller Voice	4-16
Recorder Contents	9-6
Recorder Link	15-17
Reference URLs	17-24
Reject (calls)	4-14
Relaxation Time	11-13
Remote Lock (Osaifu-Keitai®)	11-22
Call Remote Lock	11-23
Count for Lock	11-51
Mail Remote Lock	11-22
Notice Settings	11-51
Remote Monitor	4-14
Reply	5-14, 5-23, 5-30
Auto Reply	5-31
Opening received message for reference	5-30
Set Quick Reply	5-30
Reply Assist Dictionary	3-12
Reset (→ Master Reset)	16-8
Reset All	16-8
Reset Settings	16-8
Reset Settings (S! Applications)	10-7
Retrieve NW Info	16-7
Retrieving Network Information	1-7
Review	8-27
RSS Feeds	6-10

S

S! Addressbook Back-up	15-22
Auto Sync Settings	15-29
Sync Log	15-29
S! Applications	10-2
S! Circle Talk	12-9, 12-16
Accepting requests	12-10
Initiating	12-10
IP Service Setting	16-7
Registering Members	12-9
S! Contents Store	12-4
S! FeliCa (→ Osaifu-Keitai®)	11-20
S! Friend's Status	12-6, 12-15
IP Service Setting	16-7
Opening Member Status	12-7
S! GPS Navi	11-32
S! Information Channel (Japanese)	12-3, 12-13
Weather Indicator	12-3
S! Mail	5-2
Attaching Files	5-5
Create Msg. Size	5-26, 5-37
Feeling Mail	5-6
Graphic Mail	5-7
S! Mail (sending)	5-4
S! Quick News (Japanese)	12-2
Automatic Update	12-13
Deleting items	12-13
Safety Precautions	vi
SAR	xxi
Saved Pages	6-9, 6-16
Scan Barcode	11-39
Open Barcode	11-55
Scanning during text entry	11-55
Using scan results	11-55
Scan Card	11-41
Using scan results	11-57
Scan Text	11-42
Scanning and pasting during text entry	11-57

Using scan results	11-58
Scanning Receipts	11-15
Schedules (→ Calendar)	11-2
Scratch Pad	3-17
SD Local Contents	14-9
Search	3-16
Security Codes	1-13
Sent Msg. View	5-35
Set as Wallpaper	14-8
Set Date/Time	16-2
Set Key Light	16-4
Set Key Shortcut	2-13
Set Quick Reply	5-30
Set Sent Cancel	5-25
Set Time Zone	11-27, 16-2
Shortcuts	2-13
Show My Number	4-19
Show Secret Data	13-3
Side Keys	1-3
Signature	5-10
Simple Menu	2-9
Simulated Call	11-24
Slide W paper	3-3
Small Lights	1-2
SMS	5-2
SMS Settings	5-40
SMS (sending)	5-11
Snooze	11-8, 11-9
Softkeys	1-9
Software Update	17-5
Sort Spam Mail	5-18, 5-33
Sounds & Alerts	3-5, 16-4, 16-5
Speaker	1-2
Specifications	17-19
Specifications (by function)	17-20
Basic Operations	17-20
Calling	17-20
Camera & Imaging	17-21
Connectivity & File Backup	17-23
Data Folder	17-23



Digital TV	17-21
Entertainment	17-23
Handy Extras	17-22
Internet	17-21
Memory Card	17-23
Messaging	17-20
Network	17-23
SI Applications & Widgets	17-22
Universal Operations, Etc.	17-20
Video & Music	17-22
Speed Dial/Mail	4-6, 5-24
Spinguru Menu	2-10
Standby	1-7
Standby Shortcuts	2-15
Status Icon List	1-8
Status Templates	14-2
Still images (capturing)	8-6
Easy Auto Camera	8-3
ISO Sensitivity	8-36
Long Exposure	8-36
Picture Size	8-35
Pro Auto Camera	8-6
Quick Camera	8-7
Shake Reducing	8-36
Shutter Sound	8-36
White Balance	8-36
Still images (capturing & sending)	8-10
Still images (editing)	8-28
Additional editing options	8-40
Changing sizes	8-29
Face Arrange	8-30
Merge Panorama	8-32
Stopwatch	11-25
Strap Eyelet	1-2
Streaming	6-4
Sub Display	1-2
Swap Calls	4-18
System Graphics	16-3
System Sounds	16-6

T

Table of Contents	iii
Tasks	11-6
Deleting Tasks	11-7
Editing tasks	11-46
Opening Tasks	11-7
Text (editing)	3-11
Text Entry	3-6
Correction Conversion	3-9
Emoticons	3-10
Hiragana	3-8
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion	3-10
Input/Conversion	3-21
Inserting line breaks	3-21
Inserting Phone Book entry items	3-21
Inserting spaces	3-21
Katakana	3-9
Mail & Web Extensions	3-10
One-Hiragana Conversion	3-9
Personal Mode	3-8
Pictograms & Symbols	3-9
Quick Conversion	3-10
Reset Log	3-21
Search Word	3-9
Single Kanji Conversion	3-8
Switching Entry Modes	3-7
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	3-21
Using Character Codes	3-21
Using Pager Code	3-21
When Target Word is Not Listed	3-8
Text Entry Key Assignments	17-9
Time Correction	16-2
Time Shift	7-11
Touch-Tone Signal List	4-19
Troubleshooting	17-7
TV (watching)	7-4
AV Mode	7-12, 7-13

Channels (saving)	7-12
Data Broadcast (Japanese)	7-6
Help	7-12
Program Info	7-7
TV Listing (Japanese)	7-7
Using wireless Headphones	7-13
TV Player	7-9
TV programs (recording/playing)	7-8, 7-9
Details	7-16
Marker List	7-16
Markers	7-16
Memory Remaining	7-16
Playback Pattern	7-15
Playing split files	7-15
Recorded programs (deleting)	7-16
Recorded programs (renaming)	7-16
Set Call Time Shift	7-15
Split File	7-15
TV Timers (watching/recording)	7-10
Setting Timer via Program Info	7-7
Timer entries (opening/editing/deleting)	7-17
Timer log records (opening/playing/deleting)	7-17
TV Alarm	7-17
TV Reserve Prior	7-17
Wakeup TV	11-10

U

USB Charge	1-5
User Dictionary	3-12
Deleting entries	3-22
USIM Card	17-2
USIM PIN (→ PIN)	17-2
Utility Software	15-17

V

VeilView	2-22
Vibration	3-5
Video (deleting)	9-10, 9-11
Video (downloading)	9-4



Video (editing)	8-33
Video (playing)	9-6, 9-8
Video (recording)	8-17
Golf Swing Video Camera.....	8-20
HD Video Camera.....	8-17
Microphone.....	8-39
Picture Size (recording size).....	8-23
Pro Auto Video Camera.....	8-5
Shake Reducing.....	8-39
Video Camera for Mail.....	8-19
Video Calling	4-5
Remote Monitor.....	4-14
Video Calls (answering)	4-5
Video Calls (placing)	4-5
Viewer Position	1-2
Voice Calling	4-3
Voice Calls (answering)	4-3
Voice Calls (placing)	4-3
Voice Calls (placing while abroad)	4-4
Voice Recorder	11-38
Record Time.....	11-54
Save and Send.....	11-54
Save Recording to.....	11-54
Voicemail	4-12, 4-13
Volume (ringtones)	16-5

W

Wakeup TV	11-10
Wallpaper	3-3
Slide W paper.....	3-3
Warranty	17-42
Weather Indicator	12-3
Icon Update.....	12-14
Manual Update.....	12-3
Weather.....	12-14
Weather Indicator List	17-18
Widgets	10-3
Wi-Fi	15-2
World Clock	11-27
WPS	15-3

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
----------------------------	-----

Objectives

Accessing Secret Files/Entries

Data Folder.....	14-4
Messaging folders.....	5-17
Phone Book.....	3-19
Schedules/tasks.....	11-4

Accessing the Internet

Direct Browser.....	6-5
From message text.....	5-29
From scan results.....	11-55, 11-58
Media Player.....	9-4
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
RSS Feeds.....	6-10
Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3

Browsing/Viewing

Album.....	8-24
Blog Tool.....	12-12
Digital Media Viewer.....	12-5
Direct Browser.....	6-5
Document Viewer.....	11-35
e-Books.....	12-5
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
S! Information Channel.....	12-3
S! Quick News.....	12-2
Yahoo! Keitai.....	6-3

Calculating

Calculator.....	11-18
Expenses Memo.....	11-19
Household Accounts.....	11-14

Canceling/Removing

Alarm.....	11-9
Answer Phone.....	4-4
Call Barring restrictions.....	4-19
Call Forwarding.....	4-13
Customized Screen.....	3-21
Download Dictionary.....	3-12

Function Lock.....	13-2
Hour Minder.....	11-28
IC Card Lock.....	11-21
Keypad Lock.....	2-20
Large Font Menu.....	3-2
Manner mode.....	2-21
Offline Mode.....	2-21
PIN Lock.....	17-2
S! Information Channel.....	12-3
Secret folders.....	5-33, 14-4
Simple Menu.....	2-9
Speed Dial entries.....	4-6
VeilView.....	2-22
Voicemail.....	4-13
Wakeup TV.....	11-11

Changing

Font Size.....	3-2
Font Weight.....	3-2
Handset mail address.....	5-3
Key Shortcut.....	2-13
PIN.....	13-5

Changing Ringtones

Phone Book.....	3-19
Ringtone/videos.....	3-5
Via Data Folder.....	14-8

Composing/Sending Messages

Feeling Mail.....	5-6
From Call Log records.....	4-16
From Internet pages.....	6-12
From message text.....	5-29
From Phone Book.....	3-24
From received messages.....	5-14
From scan results.....	11-55, 11-58
From Scratch Pad.....	3-17
From sent messages.....	5-34
Graphic Mail.....	5-7, 5-27
Inserting ASCII Art.....	11-37
PC Mail.....	5-23
S! Mail.....	5-4
SMS.....	5-11



Copying

Calculation results	11-50
Data Folder files	14-4
From text entry window	3-11
Scan results	11-56, 11-57, 11-58
Text (e-Books)	12-14
Text (Internet pages)	6-12
Text (Messaging)	5-30
Text (S! Information Channel pages)	12-14

Downloading

Content	12-4
Customized Screen	3-4
e-Books	12-5
Free content	12-4
Music	9-4
S! Applications	10-6
Video	9-4
Widgets	10-4

Exchanging Files

Bluetooth®	15-13
Exchange Profile	15-10
IC Transmission	15-11
Infrared	15-7
Mass Storage	15-17
MTP Mode	9-4

Hiding Files/Entries

Data Folder	14-4
Messaging folders	5-17
Phone Book	3-19
Schedules/tasks	11-44, 11-46

Inserting/Removing

Battery	17-4
Memory Card	14-5
USIM Card	17-3

Locking/Restricting

Application Lock	13-3
Call Log	13-3
Direct Browser	6-14
Function Control	13-4
Function Lock	13-2

Incoming/outgoing calls	4-19
Keypad Lock	2-20
Mail records	13-3
Osaifu-Keita®	11-21
PIN Entry	13-2
Secure Remote Lock	13-2

Managing Schedules

Calendar	11-2
Tasks	11-6

Measuring Time

Countdown Timer	11-26
Stopwatch	11-25

Notifying Phone Number

Opening My Details	2-22
Via Exchange Profile	15-10
Via IC Transmission	15-26
Via Infrared	15-26

Placing Calls

By entering phone numbers	4-3
From Call Log records	4-16
From Internet pages	6-12
From message text	5-29
From Phone Book	3-20
From scan results	11-55, 11-58
International calls	4-3
Speed Dial	4-6
Video Calls	4-5
While abroad	4-4

Playing

Answer Phone messages/caller voice	4-4
Files (Scan Barcode)	11-56
Music	9-5
Recorded TV programs	7-9
Recorded TV programs from Timer log	7-17
Split files (TV)	7-15
Streams	6-15
Video	9-6
Video (transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders)	9-6
Voice files	11-38

Voicemail messages	4-13
--------------------------	------

Rejecting

Calls from public phones	4-11
Calls from specified numbers	4-11
Calls from unsaved numbers	4-11
Undisplayable Caller ID	4-11
Withheld Caller ID	4-11

Resetting/Formatting

All settings	16-8
Handset	16-8
Memory Card	14-6

Saving

Attachments within Graphic Mail	5-30
Backup	15-21
Captured still images	8-6, 8-7, 8-9
Draft messages	5-25
Edited still images	8-28, 8-32
Edited video	8-33
Files (Internet)	6-12
Files (S! Information Channel pages)	12-14
Graphic Mail templates	5-7
Mail attachments	5-29
My Pictograms	5-30
Notepad entries	11-36
Phone Book entries	3-18
Recorded video	8-17, 8-19, 8-20
TV channels	7-12

Saving Phone Book Entries

Add New Entry	3-18
Data Folder files	14-8
During a call	4-16
From Call Log records	4-16
From message window	5-29
From scan results	11-55, 11-57

Scanning

Business cards	11-41
Kanji/English words	11-43
QR Codes	11-39
Receipts	11-15
Text	11-42



Searching

Access points	15-4
Bluetooth® devices	15-14
Messages	3-16, 5-17
Music to download	9-4
Music to play	9-5
Notepad entries	11-54
Phone Book	3-20
Text (Internet pages)	6-12
TV program information	7-12
Video to download	9-4
Video to play	9-6
Web Search	3-16

Sending via Mail

Data Folder files	5-5, 14-3
Notepad entries	11-54
QR Codes	11-40
Scan results	11-56, 11-57, 11-58
Still images	8-10
URLs	6-12, 6-15
Video	8-19
Voice files	11-54

Setting Wallpaper

From attached files	5-29
From scan results	11-56
From Sound/Display menu	3-3
Via Data Folder	14-8
Via mobile camera	8-10

Showing in Standby

Clock/Calendar	16-4
Mobile Widgets	10-3
S! Applications	10-6
Standby Shortcuts	2-15
Wallpaper	3-3
World Clock	11-27

Using as Alarm Clock

Alarms	11-8
Hour Minder	11-28
Wakeup TV	11-10

Using Away from Home

Alarms	11-8
Camera	8-2
Compass	11-31
Digital TV	7-2
Hour Minder	11-28
Osaifu-Keitai®	11-20
Pedometer	11-29
Pen Light	2-22
Public wireless LAN services	15-6
Scratch Pad	3-17
Search	3-16
S! GPS Navi	11-32
Voice Recorder	11-38



Warranty & Service

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.17-7** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank Mobile for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.17-43**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.17-43**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113



SoftBank 945SH User Guide

August 2010, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 945SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.